



# Peplink Balance and MediaFast

## User Manual

### Peplink Products:

One/One Core/Two/20/20X/30 LTE/30 Pro/210/310/310X/  
305/380/380X/580/580X/710/1350/2500/EPX/SDX/SDX Pro/  
MediaFast 200/500/750

Peplink Balance Firmware 8.1.0  
November 2020

# Table of Contents

Introduction and Scope	8
Glossary	9
Product Comparison Charts	11
Balance Routers (for Small Office / Branch)	11
Balance Routers (for for Enterprise / Headquarters)	12
MediaFast Routers	13
Product Features	14
Advanced Feature Summary	18
Drop-in Mode and LAN Bypass: Transparent Deployment	18
QoS: Clearer VoIP	18
Per-User Bandwidth Control	19
High Availability via VRRP	19
USB Modem and Android Tethering	20
Built-In Remote User VPN Support	20
LACP NIC Bonding	21
KVM Virtualization	21
DPI Engine	21
Package Contents	22
Peplink Balance One/Two	22
Peplink Balance 20/30/30 LTE/30 Pro/50	22
Peplink Balance 20X	22
Peplink Balance 210/310	22
Peplink Balance 310X	23
Peplink Balance 305/380/580/710/1350/2500	23
Peplink Balance 380X/580X	23
Peplink MediaFast 200	23
Peplink MediaFast 500	23
Peplink EPX	24
Peplink SDX	24
Peplink SDX Pro	24

Peplink Balance Overview	24
Peplink Balance One	24
Peplink Balance Two	26
Peplink Balance 20	29
Peplink Balance 20X	30
Peplink Balance 30 LTE	31
Peplink Balance 30 Pro	33
Peplink Balance 50	36
Peplink Balance 210	38
Peplink Balance 305	39
Peplink Balance 310	41
Peplink Balance 310X	42
Peplink Balance 380	45
Peplink Balance 380X	46
Peplink Balance 580	48
Peplink Balance 580X	50
Peplink Balance 710	52
Peplink Balance 1350	53
Peplink Balance 2500	55
Peplink MediaFast Overview	57
Peplink MediaFast 200	57
Peplink MediaFast 500	58
Peplink MediaFast 750	59
Peplink Flex-Module Supported Models	62
Peplink EPX	62
Peplink SDX	64
Peplink SDX Pro	67
Flex Module Expansion Modules	70
LCD Display Menu	74
Installation	75
Preparation	75
Constructing the Network	75
Basic Configuration	76
Connecting to the Web Admin Interface	76
Configuration with the Setup Wizard	77
SpeedFusion Cloud	82

Activate SpeedFusion Cloud Service	82
Enable SpeedFusion Cloud	84
Connect Clients to Cloud	91
Link Wi-Fi to Cloud	92
Network Tab	94
WAN	94
Health Check Settings	106
Bandwidth Allowance Monitor Settings	109
Additional Public IP Settings	109
Dynamic DNS Settings	110
LAN	112
Network Settings	112
Network Settings (Common Settings)	116
Port Settings	121
VPN	122
SpeedFusion	122
IPsec VPN	128
Outbound Policy	133
Inbound Access	144
Servers	145
Services	145
DNS Settings	149
NAT Mappings	167
MediaFast	169
Setting Up MediaFast Content Caching	169
Viewing MediaFast Statistics	171
Prefetch Schedule	172
ContentHub	174
Configure a website to be published from the ContentHub	175
Configure an application to be published from the ContentHub	177
MDM Settings	179
Docker	180
KVM	181
Captive Portal	181
QoS	185
User Groups	185
Bandwidth Control	185
Application	186

Prioritization for Custom Application	187
DSL/Cable Optimization	187
Firewall	187
Access Rules	188
Intrusion Detection and DoS Prevention	193
Content Blocking	194
Application Blocking	194
Web Blocking	194
Customized Domains	195
Exempted User Groups	195
Exempted Subnets	195
URL Logging	195
OSPF & RIPv2	195
BGP	199
Remote User Access	201
L2TP with IPsec	201
OpenVPN	202
PPTP	202
Authentication Methods	203
Misc. Settings	204
High Availability	204
Certificate Manager	208
Service Forwarding	208
SMTP Forwarding	210
Web Proxy Forwarding	210
DNS Forwarding	211
Custom Service Forwarding	211
Service Passthrough	211
NTP Server	212
Grouped Networks	213
SIM Toolkit	214
AP Tab	216
AP	216
AP Controller	216
Wireless SSID	218
AP > Profiles	222
AP Controller Status	226
Info	226

Access Points (Usage)	227
Wireless SSID	229
Wireless Client	230
Nearby Device	232
Event Log	232
Toolbox	233
System Tab	234
System	234
Admin Security	234
Firmware	238
Web admin interface: install updates manually	239
The InControl method	240
Time	240
Schedule	241
Email Notification	242
Event Log	244
SNMP	245
InControl	248
Configuration	249
Feature Add-ons	250
Reboot	250
Tools	251
Ping	251
Traceroute	251
Wake-on-LAN	252
WAN Analysis	252
CLI (Command Line) Support	256
Status Tab	258
Status	258
Device	258
Active Sessions	259
Client List	261
WINS Clients	263
OSPF & RIPv2	263
MediaFast	263
PepVPN / SpeedFusion Status	264
Event Log	269

Device Event Log	270
IPsec Event Log	270
Bandwidth	271
Real-Time	271
Hourly	272
Daily	272
Monthly	275
Appendix	276
Restoration of Factory Defaults	276
Routing under DHCP, Static IP, and PPPoE	277
Case Studies	279
Harrington Industrial Plastics	283
PLUSS	286
Troubleshooting	295

## Introduction and Scope

Peplink Balance routers provide link aggregation and load balancing across multiple WAN connections. We develop products and technologies that can help you build SD-WAN networks with unbreakable connection resilience, unmatched deployment flexibility, and intuitive ease of use.

Our product and technology focus has always been on WAN virtualization and the intelligent use of multiple WAN links at the same time to increase reliability and bandwidth whilst reducing costs. We have two key WAN virtualization technologies, Intelligent load balancing for Internet access and SpeedFusion VPN Bonding for secure branch to branch connectivity.

The Peplink MediaFast series are a range of routers capable of content caching. Designed with education and entertainment in mind, MediaFast downloads and accelerates video, iTunes iOS updates, app downloads, and other content for uninterrupted learning and fun anytime. The MediaFast can prefetch content during off-peak hours, saving connectivity costs and reducing network burden during busy times.

This manual applies to the following Peplink Balance products:

- Peplink Balance One
- Peplink Balance Two
- Peplink Balance 20
- Peplink Balance 20X
- Peplink Balance 30 LTE/Pro
- Peplink Balance 210
- Peplink Balance 310
- Peplink Balance 310X
- Peplink Balance 380
- Peplink Balance 580
- Peplink Balance 710
- Peplink Balance 1350
- Peplink Balance 2500
- Peplink MediaFast 200/500/750
- Peplink EPX
- Peplink SDX
- Peplink SDX Pro

The manual covers setting up your Peplink Balance or MediaFast and provides a collection of case studies detailing the advanced features of the Peplink Balance.



# 1 Glossary

The following terms, acronyms, and abbreviations are frequently used in this manual:

Term	Definition
3G	3rd generation standards for wireless communications (e.g., HSDPA)
4G	4th generation standards for wireless communications (e.g., LTE)
DHCP	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
DNS	Domain Name System
EVDO	Evolution-Data Optimized
FQDN	Fully Qualified Domain Name
HSDPA	High-Speed Downlink Packet Access
HTTP	Hyper-Text Transfer Protocol
ICMP	Internet Control Message Protocol
IP	Internet Protocol
LAN	Local Area Network
MAC Address	Media Access Control Address
MTU	Maximum Transmission Unit
MSS	Maximum Segment Size
NAT	Network Address Translation
PPPoE	Point to Point Protocol over Ethernet
QoS	Quality of Service
SNMP	Simple Network Management Protocol
TCP	Transmission Control Protocol
UDP	User Datagram Protocol
VPN	Virtual Private Network
VRF	Virtual Routing and Forwarding

VRRP	Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol
WAN	Wide Area Network
WINS	Windows Internet Name Service
WLAN	Wireless Local Area Network
210+	Refers to Peplink Balance 210/310/380/580/710/1350/2500
380+	Refers to Peplink Balance 380/580/710/1350/2500

## 2 Product Comparison Charts

### 2.1 Balance Routers (for Small Office / Branch)

	20	20X	30 LTE	30 PRO	ONE	TWO	210	310X
<b>Product Code</b>	<b>BPL-021</b>	<b>BPL-021X-LTE</b>	<b>BPL-031-LTE</b>	<b>BPL-031-LTEA</b>	<b>BPL-ONE</b>	<b>BPL-TWO</b>	<b>BPL-210</b>	<b>BPL-310X</b>
<b>Capacity</b>								
<b>Ethernet WAN Ports</b>	2 (GE) +	1 (GE)	2 (GE)	2 (GE)	<a href="#">2/5 (GE) #</a>	2 (GE)	2 (GE) +	2 (GE)
<b>LAN Ports</b>	4 (GE)	4 (GE)	4 (GE)	4 (GE)	<a href="#">8/5 (GE) #</a>	4 (GE)	7 (GE)	9 (GE)
<b>Simultaneous Dual-Band 802.11ac/a/b/g/n Wi-Fi AP</b>	No	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
<b>Embedded 4G LTE</b>	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No	No	Yes
<b>SIM Card Size</b>	No	Mini-SIM (2FF)	Mini-SIM (2FF)	Mini-SIM (2FF)	No	No	No	Mini-SIM (2FF)
<b>USB WAN Modem Port</b>	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	2
<b>Recommended Users</b>	1-60	1-60	1-60	1-60	1-60	25-150	25-150	50-500
<b>Stateful Firewall Throughput</b>	150Mbps	900Mbps	200Mbps	400Mbps	<a href="#">600Mbps/400Mbps #</a>	1Gbps	350Mbps	2.5Gbps

A full product comparison for Balance routers is available at:  
<http://www.peplink.com/products/balance/model-comparison/>

## 2.2 Balance Routers (for for Enterprise / Headquarters)

	305	310X	380	580	710	1350	2500
<b>Product Code</b>	<b>BPL-305</b>	<b>BPL-310X</b>	<b>BPL-380</b>	<b>BPL-580</b>	<b>BPL-710</b>	<b>BPL-135</b>	<b>BPL-2500 *</b>
<b>Capacity</b>							
<b>Ethernet WAN Ports</b>	3 (GE)	2 (GE)	3 (GE)	5 (GE)	<u>7 (GE)</u>	13 (GE)	12 (GE)/4 (GE) & 2 (10G SFP+) *
<b>LAN Ports</b>	3 (GE)	9 (GE)	3 (GE)	3 (GE)	3 (GE)	3 (GE)	8 (GE)/ 2 (10G SFP+) *
<b>Simultaneous Dual-Band 802.11ac/a/b/g/n Wi-Fi AP</b>	No	No	No	No	No	No	No
<b>Embedded 4G LTE</b>	No	Yes	No	No	No	No	No
<b>SIM Card Size</b>	No	Yes	No	No	No	No	No
<b>USB WAN Modem Port</b>	1	2	1	1	1	1	1
<b>Recommended Users</b>	50-500	50-500	50-500	300-1000	500-2000	1000-5000	5000-20000+
<b>Stateful Firewall Throughput</b>	1Gbps	2.5Gbps	1Gbps	1.5Gbps	2.5Gbps	5Gbps	8Gbps

A full product comparison for Balance routers is available at:

<http://www.peplink.com/products/balance/model-comparison/>

## 2.3 MediaFast Routers

-	MediaFast 200	MediaFast 500	MediaFast 750
<b>Product Code</b>	MFA-200-W	MFA-500-B	MFA-750-B
<b>WAN Interface</b>	2x GE (Only WAN 1 is activated.)	5x GE	7x GE
<b>Wi-Fi Interface</b>	Simultaneous Dual-Band 802.11a/b/g/n Access Point	-	-
<b>Embedded 3G/4G LTE</b>	-	-	-
<b>USB WAN Modem</b>	1	1	1
<b>LAN Interface</b>	8x GE; 802.3af PoE Output	3x GE	3x GE
<b>Recommended Users</b>	25-150	300-1000	500-2000
<b>Router Throughput</b>	200Mbps	800Mbps	1.5Gbps
<b>Disk Drive</b>	120GB SSD	500GB SSD	1TB SSD
<b>Load Balancing &amp; Failover</b>	Yes	Yes	Yes
<b>PepVPN</b>	Yes	Yes	Yes
<b>SpeedFusion Hot Failover</b>	Optional Feature	Yes	Yes
<b>SpeedFusion WAN Smoothing</b>	Optional Feature	Yes	Yes
<b>SpeedFusion Bandwidth Bonding</b>	Optional Feature	Yes	Yes
<b>Number of PepVPN/SpeedFusion Peers</b>	2	50	300
<b>PepVPN/ SpeedFusion Throughput</b>	50Mbps	200Mbps	400Mbps
<b>Built-in AP Controller</b>	Yes	Yes	Yes
<b>Maximum Number of AP Support</b>	50	100	250
<b>PoE Input</b>	-	-	-
<b>PoE Output</b>	8x 802.3af (optional feature)	-	-
<b>Dimensions</b>	292 x 177 x 44 mm	431 x 305 x 44 mm	426 x 365 x 44 mm
<b>Gross Weight</b>	2.8 kg	6.6 kg	5.5 kgs

A full product comparison for MediaFast routers is available at:

<https://www.peplink.com/products/mediafast-specifications/>

## 3 Product Features

Peplink Balance Series products enable all LAN users to share broadband Internet connections and provide advanced features to enhance Internet access. The following is a list of supported features:

### WAN

- Multiple public IP support (DHCP, PPPoE, static IP address)
- Static IP support for PPPoE
- 10/100/1000Mbps Ethernet connection in full/half duplex
- Built-in HSPA and EVDO cellular modems
- USB mobile connection (**only one USB modem can be connected at a time**)
- Drop-in mode on selectable WAN port with MAC address passthrough network address translation (NAT) / port address translation (PAT)
- Inbound and outbound NAT mapping
- Multiple static IP addresses per WAN connection
- MAC address clone
- Customizable MTU and MSS values
- WAN connection health check
- Dynamic DNS (supported service providers: changeip.com, dyndns.org, no-ip.org, tzo.com, and DNS-O-Matic)
- Ping, DNS lookup, and HTTP-based health check
- WAN throughput and consistency diagnosis
- WAN to WAN speed test
- USB Ethernet Adapter support

### LAN

- DHCP server on LAN
- Extended DHCP option support
- Static routing rules
- Local DNS proxy server
- 802.1q VLANs
- Port-based VLANs
- Virtual Network Mapping

## VPN

- Secure SpeedFusion™
- SpeedFusion performance analyzer
- X.509 certificate support
- Bandwidth bonding and failover among selected WAN connections
- Ability to route traffic to a remote VPN peer
- Optional pre-shared key setting
- Layer 2 bridging
- Layer 2 Peer Isolation
- SpeedFusion™ throughput, ping, and traceroute tests
- Built-in L2TP / PPTP / OpenVPN VPN server
- Authenticate L2TP / PPTP clients using RADIUS and LDAP servers
- Multi-Site PepVPN Profile
- IPsec VPN for network-to-network connections
- L2TP / PPTP and IPsec passthrough
- Simultaneous L2 & L3 VPN tunnel between the same pair of devices

## Inbound Traffic Management

- TCP/UDP traffic redirection to dedicated LAN server(s)
- Inbound link load balancing by means of DNS

## Outbound Policy

- Link load distribution per TCP/UDP service
- Persistent routing for specified source and/or destination IP addresses per TCP/UDP service
- Prioritize and route traffic to VPN tunnels with Priority and Enforced algorithms
- Time-based scheduling

## AP Controller

- Configure and manage Pepwave AP devices
- Review the status of connected AP

## QoS

- Quality of service for different applications and custom protocols
- User group classification for different service levels

- Bandwidth usage control and monitoring on group- and user-level
- Application prioritization for custom protocols and DSL optimization

## Firewall

- Outbound (LAN to WAN) firewall rules
- Inbound (WAN to LAN) firewall rules per WAN connection
- Intrusion detection and prevention
- Specification of NAT mappings
- Web blocking
- Application blocking
- Time-based scheduling
- Outbound firewall rules can be defined by destination domain name

## Captive Portal

- Social Wi-Fi Hotspot Support
- Splash screen of open networks, login page for secure networks
- Customizable built-in captive portal
- Supports linking to outside page for captive portal

## Other Supported Features

- Easy-to-use web administration interface
- HTTP and HTTPS support for web administration interface
- Configurable web administration port and administrator password
- Read-only user for web admin
- Shared-IP drop-in mode
- Authentication and accounting by RADIUS server for web admin
- Firmware upgrades, configuration backups, ping, and traceroute via web administration interface
- Remote web-based configuration (via WAN and LAN interfaces)
- Remote reporting to Peplink Balance reporting server
- Hardware high availability via VRRP, with automatic configuration synchronization
- Real-time, hourly, daily and monthly bandwidth usage reports and charts
- Hardware backup via LAN bypass
- Built-in WINS server
- Time server synchronization
- SNMP
- Email notification
- Syslog



- SIP passthrough
- PPTP packet passthrough
- Active sessions
- Active client list
- WINS client list
- UPnP / NAT-PMP
- Event log is persistent across reboots
- IPv6 support
- Support for USB tethering on Android phones

## 4 Advanced Feature Summary

### 4.1 Drop-in Mode and LAN Bypass: Transparent Deployment



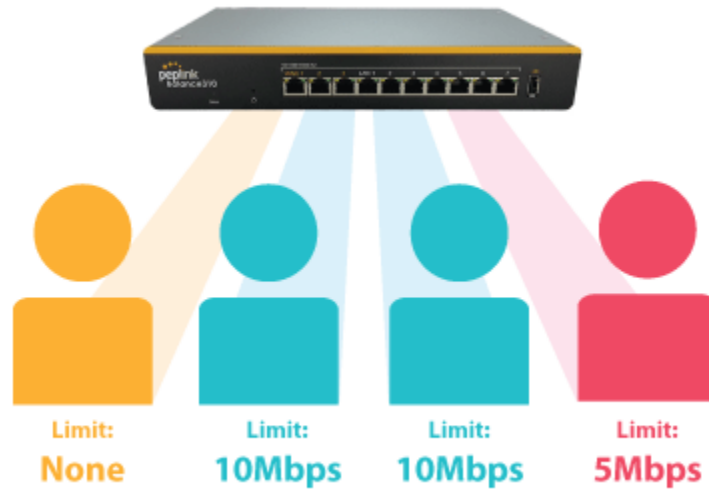
As your organization grows, it may require more bandwidth, but modifying your network can be tedious. In **Drop-in Mode**, you can conveniently install your Peplink router without making any changes to your network. For any reason your Peplink router loses power, the **LAN Bypass** will safely and automatically bypass the Peplink router to resume your original network connection.

### 4.2 QoS: Clearer VoIP



VoIP and videoconferencing are highly sensitive to latency. With QoS, Peplink routers can detect VoIP traffic and assign it the highest priority, giving you crystal-clear calls.

### 4.3 Per-User Bandwidth Control



With per-user bandwidth control, you can define bandwidth control policies for up to 3 groups of users to prevent network congestion. Define groups by IP address and subnet, and set bandwidth limits for every user in the group.

### 4.4 High Availability via VRRP



When your organization has a corporate requirement demanding the highest availability with no single point of failure, you can deploy two Peplink routers in [High Availability mode](#). With High Availability mode, the second device will take over when needed.

## 4.5 USB Modem and Android Tethering



For increased WAN diversity, plug in a USB LTE modem as backup. Peplink routers are compatible with over 200 modem types. You can also tether to smartphones running Android 4.1.X and above.

By default, the USB port is “USB Modem” mode. If you need to use it to connect to USB Ethernet Adapter, you need to change it to “USB Ethernet” mode,

<https://forum.peplink.com/t/can-i-use-ethernet-adapters-on-the-usb-wan/8327>

## 4.6 Built-In Remote User VPN Support

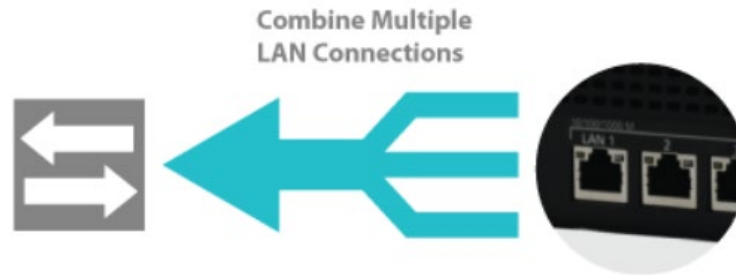


Use OpenVPN or L2TP with IPsec to safely and conveniently connect remote clients to your private network. L2TP with IPsec is supported by most devices, but legacy devices can also connect using PPTP.

[Click here for the full instructions on setting up L2TP with IPsec.](#)

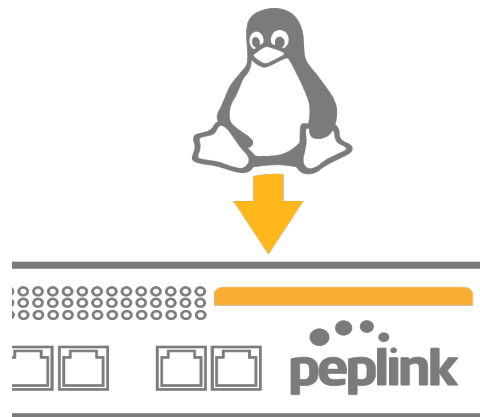
[Click here for the full instructions on setting up OpenVPN connections](#)

## 4.7 LACP NIC Bonding



Use 802.3ad to combine multiple LAN connections into a virtual LAN connection. This virtual connection has higher throughput and redundancy in case any single link fails.

## 4.8 KVM Virtualization



KVM is a virtualisation module that allows administrators, using our routers to host a large range of virtual machines. KVM is now supported by some of the Mediafast models.

[Click here for the full instructions to set up KVM](#)

## 4.9 DPI Engine

The DBI report written in the updated KB article will show further information on InControl2 through breaking down application categories into subcategories.

<https://forum.peplink.com/t/updated-ic2-deep-packet-inspection-dpi-reports-and-everything-you-need-to-know-about-it/29658>

## 5 Package Contents

The contents of Peplink Balance product packages are as follows:

### 5.1 Peplink Balance One/Two

- Peplink Balance One/Two
- Power adapter
- Information slip

### 5.2 Peplink Balance 20/30/30 LTE/30 Pro/50

- Peplink Balance 20/30/30 LTE/30 Pro/50
- Power adapter
- Information slip

### 5.3 Peplink Balance 20X

- Peplink Balance 20X
- LTE Antenna x 2, GPS Antenna x 1, Wi-Fi Antenna x 2
- Power adapter
- Information slip

### 5.4 Peplink Balance 210/310

- Peplink Balance 210/310
- Power adapter
- Information slip

- Rackmount kit

## 5.5 Peplink Balance 310X

- Peplink Balance 210/310
- LTE Antenna x 2, GPS Antenna x 1
- Power adapter
- Information slip
- Rackmount kit

## 5.6 Peplink Balance 305/380/580/710/1350/2500

- Peplink Balance 305/380/580/710/1350/2500
- Power cord
- Information slip
- Rackmount kit

## 5.7 Peplink Balance 380X/580X

- Peplink 380X/580X
- Power cord
- 1 Pair of Mounting Brackets

## 5.8 Peplink MediaFast 200

- Peplink MediaFast 200
- Power adapter
- Information slip

## 5.9 Peplink MediaFast 500

- Peplink MediaFast 500
- Power cord
- Information slip
- Rackmount kit

## 5.10 Peplink EPX

- Wireless SD-WAN Powerhouse
- EPX Chassis with LCD
- Optional x LTE-A modules
- Optional x Copper ETH module
- Optional x Fiber ETH module
- Rack mounting kit with brackets and slide

## 5.11 Peplink SDX

- SDX Base Chassis
- 1U 19" Rackmount Chassis

## 5.12 Peplink SDX Pro

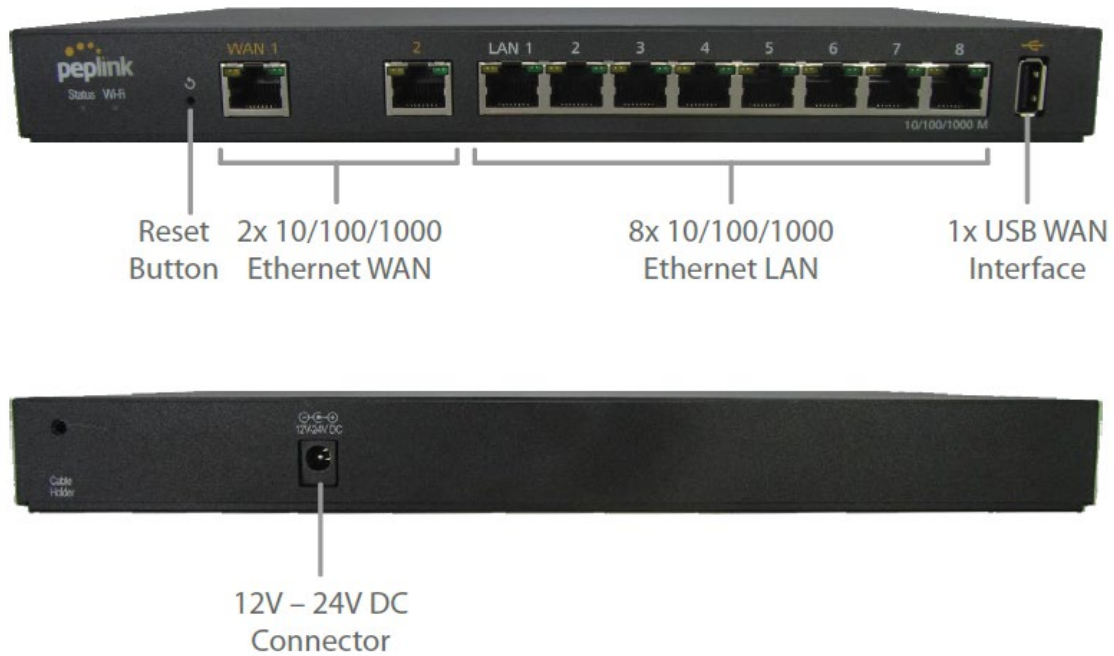
- SDX Pro Base Chassis
- 1U 19" Rack-mount Chassis
- 1x Rubber Foot Pack
- 2x Power Cords
- 1x L-mount Set

# 6 Peplink Balance Overview

## 6.1 Peplink Balance One

### 6.1.1 Panel Appearance





### 6.1.2 LED Indicators

The statuses indicated by the front panel LEDs are as follows:

Power and Status Indicators	
<b>Status</b>	OFF – Upgrading firmware
	Red – Booting up or busy
	Blinking red – Boot up error
	Green – Ready

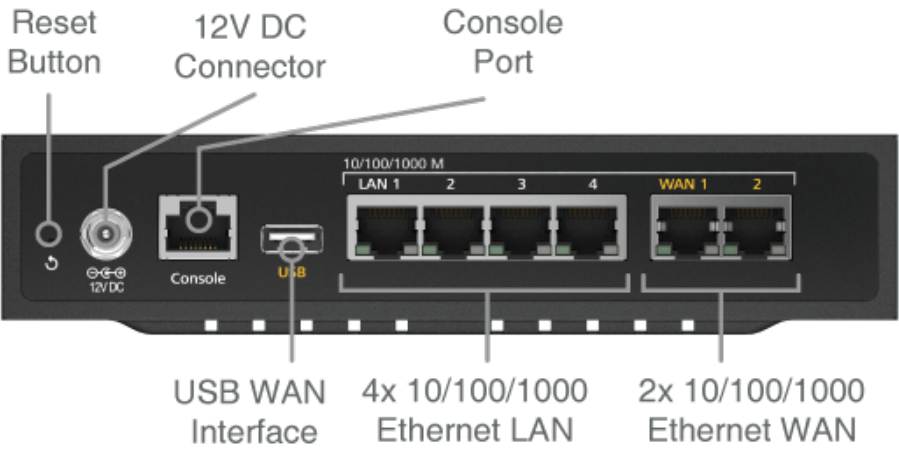
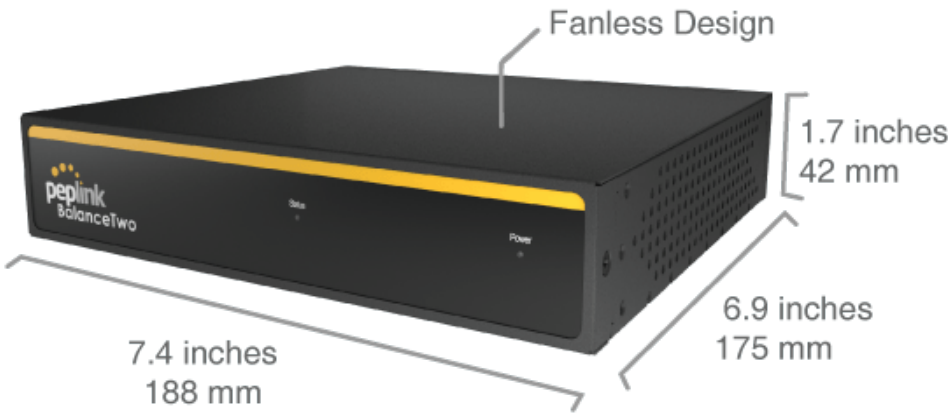
LAN and WAN Ports	
<b>Green LED</b>	ON – 1000 Mbps
	OFF – 10 / 100 Mbps or port is not connected
<b>Orange LED</b>	Blinking – Data is transferring
	OFF – No data is being transferred or port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

Wi-Fi Indicators		
<b>Wi-Fi</b>	OFF	Disabled
	Green	Ready

USB Port	
<b>USB Ports</b>	For future functionality

## 6.2 Peplink Balance Two

### 6.2.1 Panel Appearance



**6.2.2 LED Indicators**

The statuses indicated by the front panel LEDs are as follows:

**Power and Status Indicators**

<b>Power</b>	OFF – Power off
	Green – Power on
<b>Status</b>	OFF – Upgrading firmware
	Red – Booting up or busy
	Blinking red – Boot up error
	Green – Ready

LAN and WAN Ports	
<b>Green LED</b>	ON – 1000 Mbps
	OFF – 10 / 100 Mbps or port is not connected
<b>Orange LED</b>	Blinking – Data is transferring
	OFF – No data is being transferred or port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

USB Port	
<b>USB Ports</b>	For connecting a 4G/3G USB modem

## 6.3 Peplink Balance 20

### 6.3.1 Panel Appearance



### 6.3.2 LED Indicators

The statuses indicated by the front panel LEDs are as follows:

Power and Status Indicators	
<b>Power</b>	OFF – Power off
	Green – Power on
<b>Status</b>	OFF – Upgrading firmware
	Red – Booting up or busy
	Blinking red – Boot up error
	Green – Ready

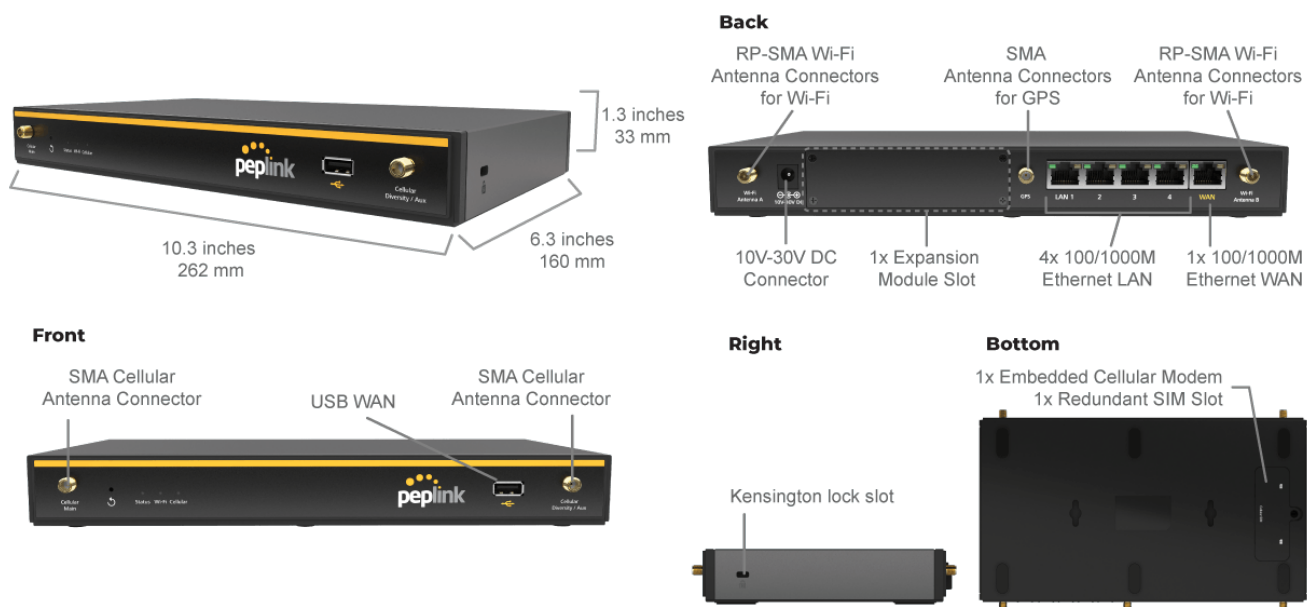
### LAN and WAN Ports

<b>Green LED</b>	ON – 10 / 100 / 1000 Mbps
<b>Orange LED</b>	Blinking – Data is transferring OFF – No data is being transferred or port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

USB Port	
<b>USB Ports</b>	For connecting a 4G/3G USB modem

## 6.4 Peplink Balance 20X

### 6.4.1 Panel Appearance



### 6.4.2 LED Indicators

The statuses indicated by the front panel LEDs are as follows:

Power and Status Indicators	
<b>Status</b>	OFF – Upgrading firmware
	Red – Booting up or busy
	Blinking red – Boot up error
	Green – Ready

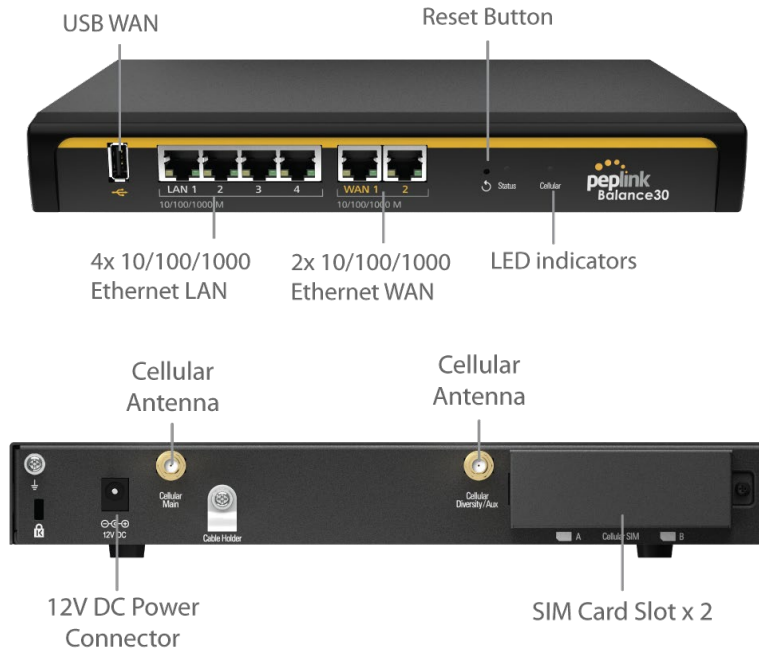
LAN and WAN Ports	
<b>Green LED</b>	ON – 1000 Mbps
	OFF – 10 / 100 Mbps or port is not connected
<b>Orange LED</b>	Blinking – Data is transferring
	OFF – No data is being transferred or port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

Wi-Fi AP Indicators		
<b>Wi-Fi AP</b>	OFF	Disabled
	ON	Enabled

USB Port	
<b>USB Ports</b>	For connecting a 4G/3G USB modem

## 6.5 Peplink Balance 30 LTE

### 6.5.1 Panel Appearance



### 6.5.2 LED Indicators

The statuses indicated by the front panel LEDs are as follows:

Power and Status Indicators	
<b>Power</b>	OFF – Power off
	Green – Power on
<b>Status</b>	OFF – Upgrading firmware
	Red – Booting up or busy
	Blinking red – Boot up error
	Green – Ready

LAN and WAN Ports	
<b>Green LED</b>	ON – 10 / 100 /1000 Mbps
	Blinking – Data is transferring



<b>Orange LED</b>	OFF – No data is being transferred or port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

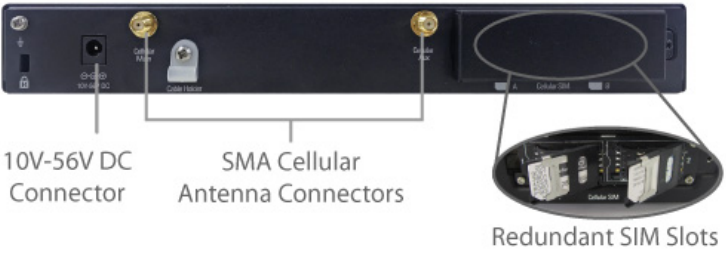
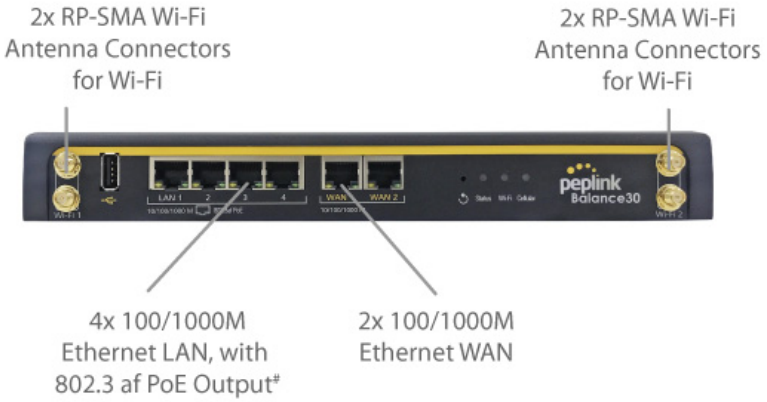
Cellular WAN Indicators		
<b>Cellular</b>	OFF	Disabled
	Blinking slowly	Connecting to wireless network
	ON	Connected to wireless network

USB Port	
<b>USB Ports</b>	For connecting a 4G/3G USB modem

## 6.6 Peplink Balance 30 Pro

For certification information, please refer to Appendix E (page 273 ~ 276)

### 6.6.1 Panel Appearance



**6.6.2 LED Indicators**

The statuses indicated by the front panel LEDs are as follows:

Power and Status Indicators	
<b>Power</b>	OFF – Power off
	Green – Power on

<b>Status</b>	OFF – Upgrading firmware
	<b>Red</b> – Booting up or busy
	<b>Blinking red</b> – Boot up error
	<b>Green</b> – Ready

WAN Ports	
<b>Green LED</b>	ON – 1000 Mbps OFF -10 / 100 Mbps or port is not connected
<b>Orange LED</b>	Blinking – Data is transferring OFF – No data is being transferred or port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

LAN Ports	
<b>Green LED</b>	ON – POE Enabled OFF - POE Disabled
<b>Orange LED</b>	Blinking – 10 / 100 / 1000 Mbps with activity OFF – No data is being transferred or port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

Wi-Fi AP Indicators		
<b>Wi-Fi AP</b>	OFF	Disabled
	ON	Enabled

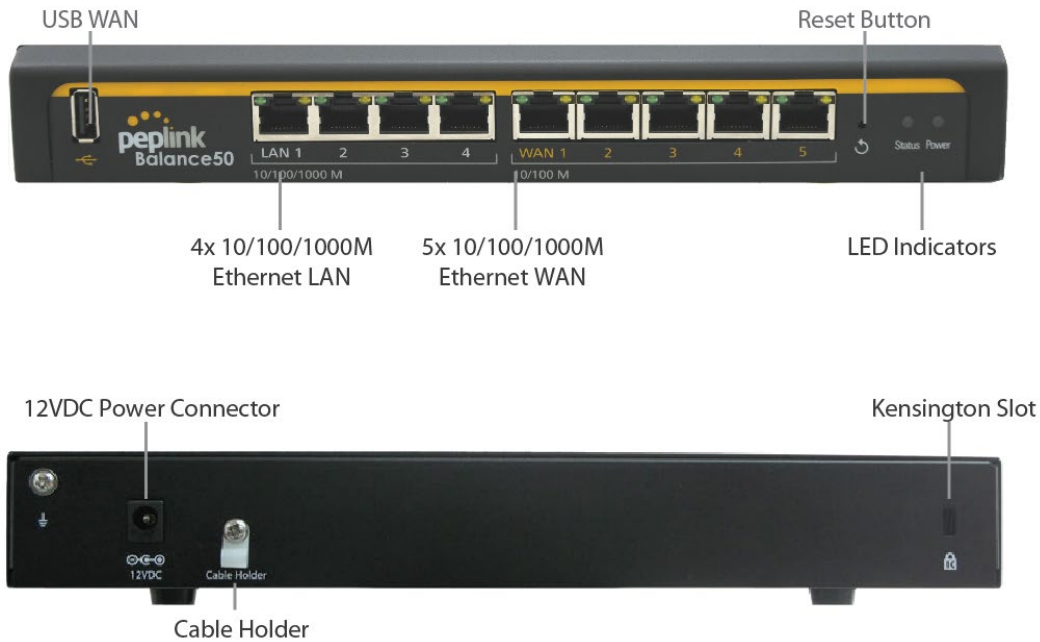
### Cellular WAN Indicators

<b>Cellular</b>	OFF	Disabled
	Blinking slowly	Connecting to wireless network
	ON	Connected to wireless network

USB Port	
<b>USB Ports</b>	For connecting a 4G/3G USB modem

## 6.7 Peplink Balance 50

### 6.7.1 Front Panel Appearance



### 6.7.2 LED Indicators

The statuses indicated by the front panel LEDs are as follows:

Power and Status Indicators	
<b>Power</b>	OFF – Power off
	Green – Power on
<b>Status</b>	OFF – Upgrading firmware
	Red – Booting up or busy
	Blinking red – Boot up error
	Green – Ready

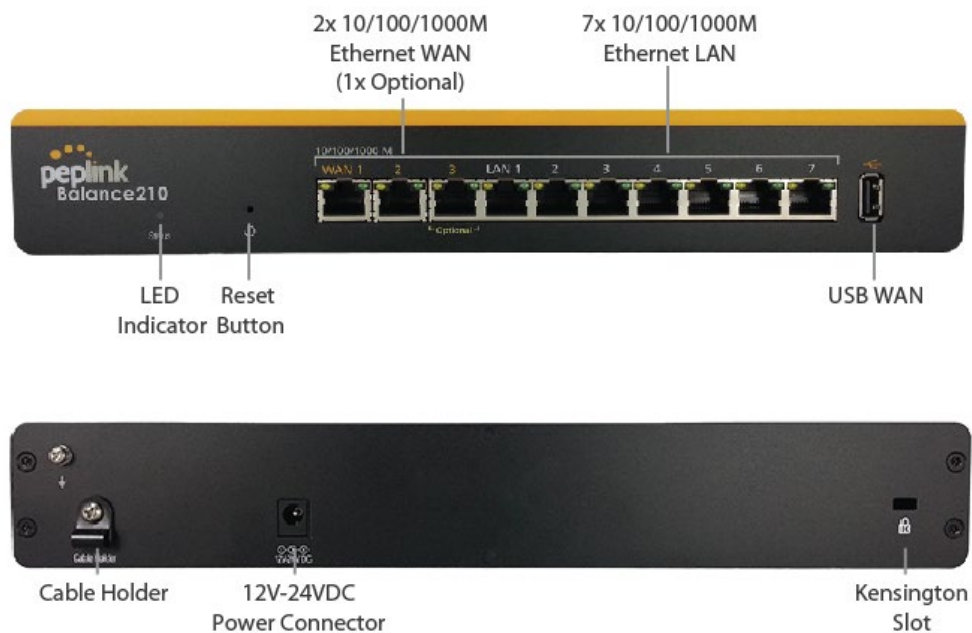
LAN and WAN Ports	
<b>Green LED</b>	ON – 10 / 100 /1000 Mbps
	Blinking – Data is transferring

<b>Orange LED</b>	OFF – No data is being transferred or port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

USB Port	
<b>USB Ports</b>	For connecting a 4G/3G USB modem

## 6.8 Peplink Balance 210

### 6.8.1 Front Panel Appearance



### 6.8.2 LED Indicators

The statuses indicated by the front panel LEDs are as follows:

Power and Status Indicators
OFF – Upgrading firmware

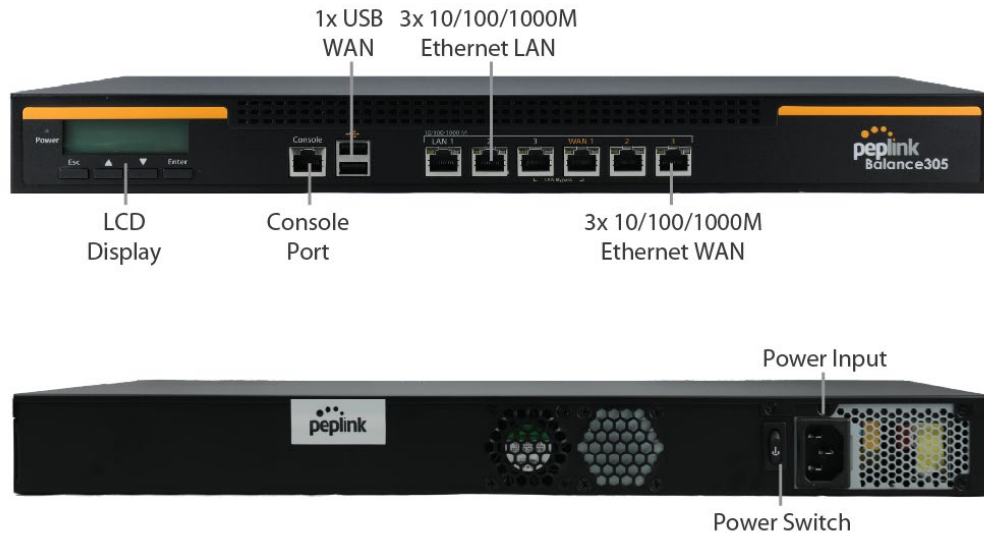
<b>Status</b>	<b>Red</b> – Booting up or busy
	<b>Blinking red</b> – Boot up error
	<b>Green</b> – Ready

LAN and WAN Ports	
<b>Green LED</b>	ON – 10 / 100 / 1000 Mbps
<b>Orange LED</b>	Blinking – Data is transferring
	OFF – No data is being transferred or port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

USB Port	
<b>USB Ports</b>	For connecting a 4G/3G USB modem

## 6.9 Peplink Balance 305

### 6.9.1 Front Panel Appearance



### 6.9.2 LED Indicators

The statuses indicated by the front panel LEDs are as follows:

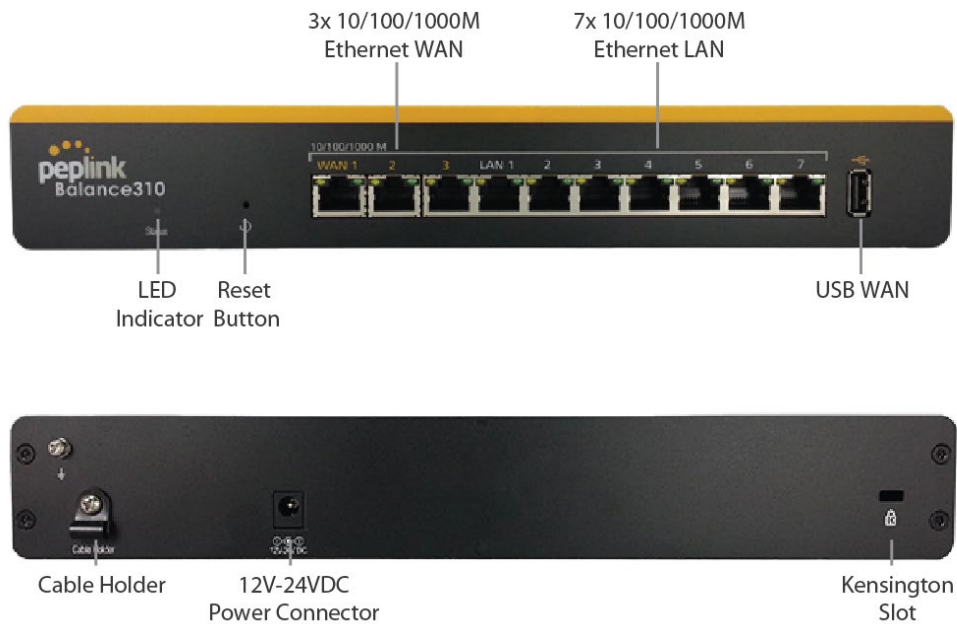
Power and Status Indicators	
<b>Power LED</b>	OFF – Power off
	GREEN – Power on
LAN Port, WAN 1 – 3 Ports	
<b>Right LED</b>	ORANGE – 1000 Mbps
	GREEN – 100 Mbps
	OFF – 10 Mbps
<b>Left LED</b>	Solid – Port is connected without traffic
	Blinking – Data is transferring
	OFF – Port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports



Console and USB Ports	
<b>Console Port</b>	Reserved for engineering use
<b>USB Ports</b>	For connecting a 4G/3G USB modem

## 6.10 Peplink Balance 310

### 6.10.1 Front Panel Appearance



### 6.10.2 LED Indicators

The statuses indicated by the front panel LEDs are as follows:

Power and Status Indicators
OFF – Upgrading firmware

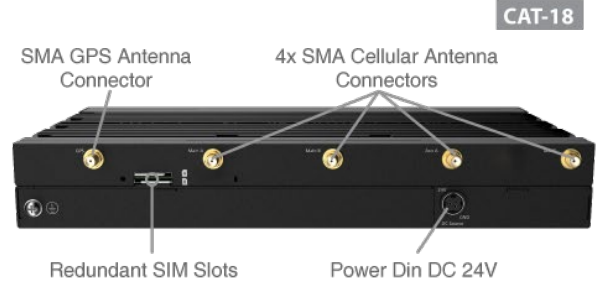
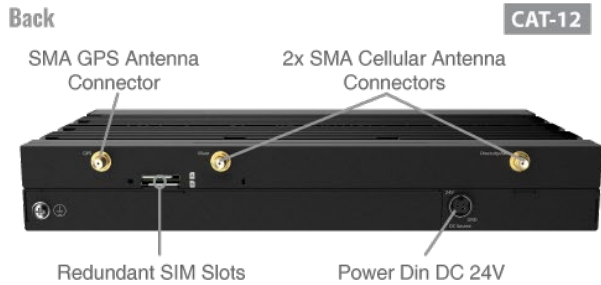
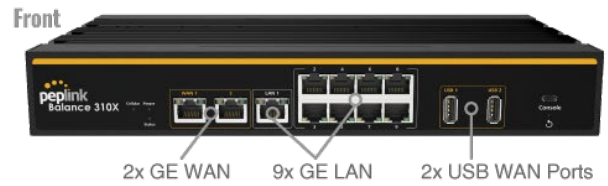
<b>Status</b>	<b>Red</b> – Booting up or busy
	<b>Blinking red</b> – Boot up error
	<b>Green</b> – Ready

LAN and WAN Ports	
<b>Green LED</b>	ON – 10 / 100 / 1000 Mbps
<b>Orange LED</b>	Blinking – Data is transferring
	OFF – No data is being transferred or port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

USB Port	
<b>USB Ports</b>	For connecting a 4G/3G USB modem

## 6.11 Peplink Balance 310X

### 6.11.1 Front Panel Appearance



### 6.11.2 LED Indicators

The statuses indicated by the front panel LEDs are as follows:

Power and Status Indicators	
<b>Power</b>	OFF – Power off
	Green – Power on
<b>Status</b>	OFF – Upgrading firmware
	Red – Booting up or busy
	Blinking red – Boot up error
	Green – Ready

WAN Ports	
<b>Green LED</b>	ON - 1000 Mbps
	OFF – 10 / 100 Mbps or port is not connected
	Blinking – Data is transferring

<b>Orange LED</b>	OFF – No data is being transferred or port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

LAN Ports	
<b>Green LED</b>	ON – 1000 Mbps OFF – 10 / 100 Mbps or port is not connected
<b>Orange LED</b>	Blinking – 10 / 100 / 1000 Mbps with activity OFF – No data is being transferred or port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

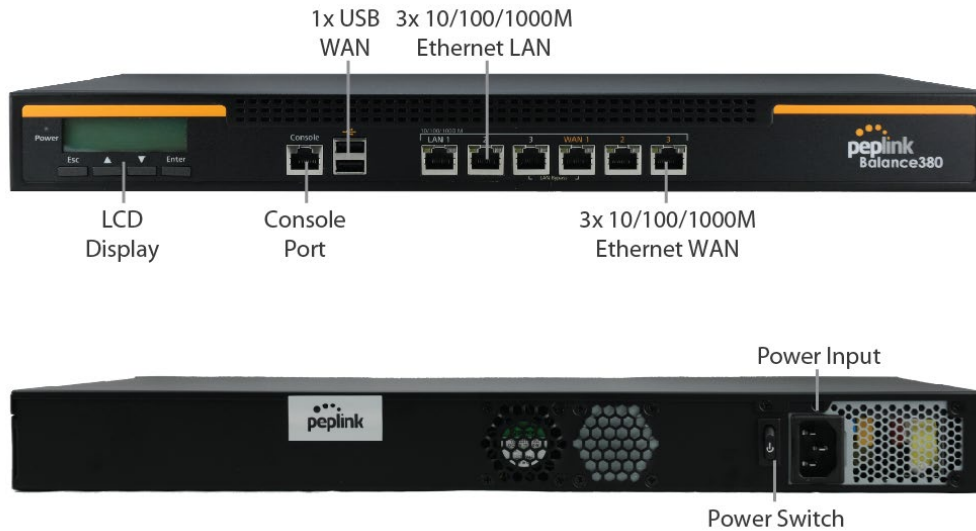
Cellular WAN Indicators		
<b>Cellular</b>	OFF	Disabled
	Blinking slowly	Connecting to wireless network
	ON	Connected to wireless network

Wi-Fi AP Indicators		
<b>Wi-Fi AP</b>	OFF	Disabled
	ON	Enabled

USB Port	
<b>USB Ports</b>	For connecting a 4G/3G USB modem

## 6.12 Peplink Balance 380

### 6.12.1 Panel Appearance



### 6.12.2 LED Indicators

The statuses indicated by the front panel LEDs are as follows:

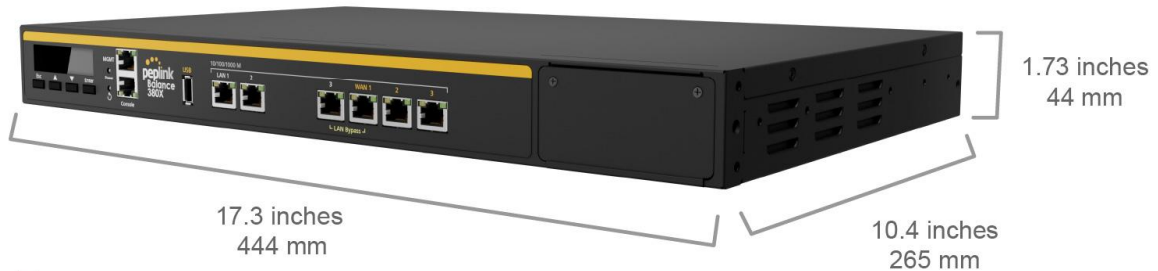
Power and Status Indicators	
<b>Power LED</b>	OFF – Power off
	GREEN – Power on
LAN Port, WAN 1 – 3 Ports	
<b>Right LED</b>	ORANGE – 1000 Mbps
	GREEN – 100 Mbps
	OFF – 10 Mbps
<b>Left LED</b>	Solid – Port is connected without traffic
	Blinking – Data is transferring

	OFF – Port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

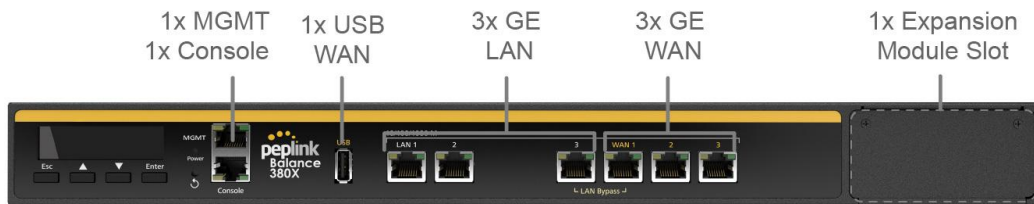
Console and USB Ports	
<b>Console Port</b>	Reserved for engineering use
<b>USB Ports</b>	For connecting a 4G/3G USB modem

## 6.13 Peplink Balance 380X

### 6.13.1 Panel Appearance



**Front**



**Back**



**6.13.2 LED Indicators**

The statuses indicated by the front panel LEDs are as follows:

Power and Status Indicators	
<b>Power LED</b>	OFF – Power off
	GREEN – Power on

**LAN Port, WAN 1 – 3 Ports**

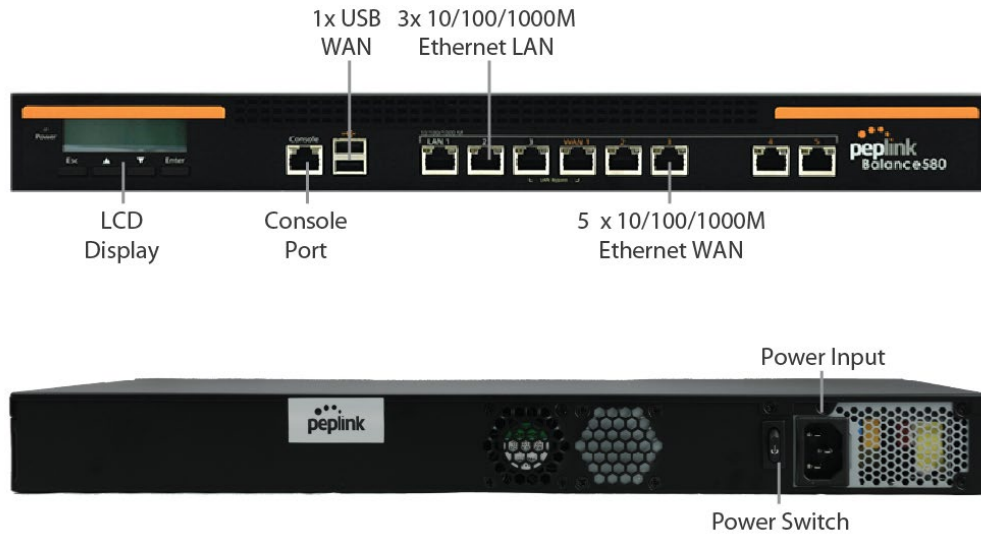
<b>Right LED</b>	GREEN – 1000 Mbps
	OFF – 10 / 100 Mbps
<b>Left LED</b>	Solid – Port is connected without traffic
	Blinking – Data is transferring
	OFF – Port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

Console and USB Ports	
<b>Console Port</b>	Reserved for engineering use
<b>USB Ports</b>	For connecting a 4G/3G USB modem

## 6.14 Peplink Balance 580

### 6.14.1 Panel Appearance





### 6.14.2 LED Indicators

The statuses indicated by the front panel LEDs are as follows:

Power and Status Indicators	
<b>Power LED</b>	OFF – Power off
	GREEN – Power on

LAN Port, WAN 1 – 5 Ports	
<b>Right LED</b>	ORANGE – 1000 Mbps
	GREEN – 100 Mbps
	OFF – 10 Mbps
<b>Left LED</b>	Solid – Port is connected without traffic
	Blinking – Data is transferring
	OFF – Port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

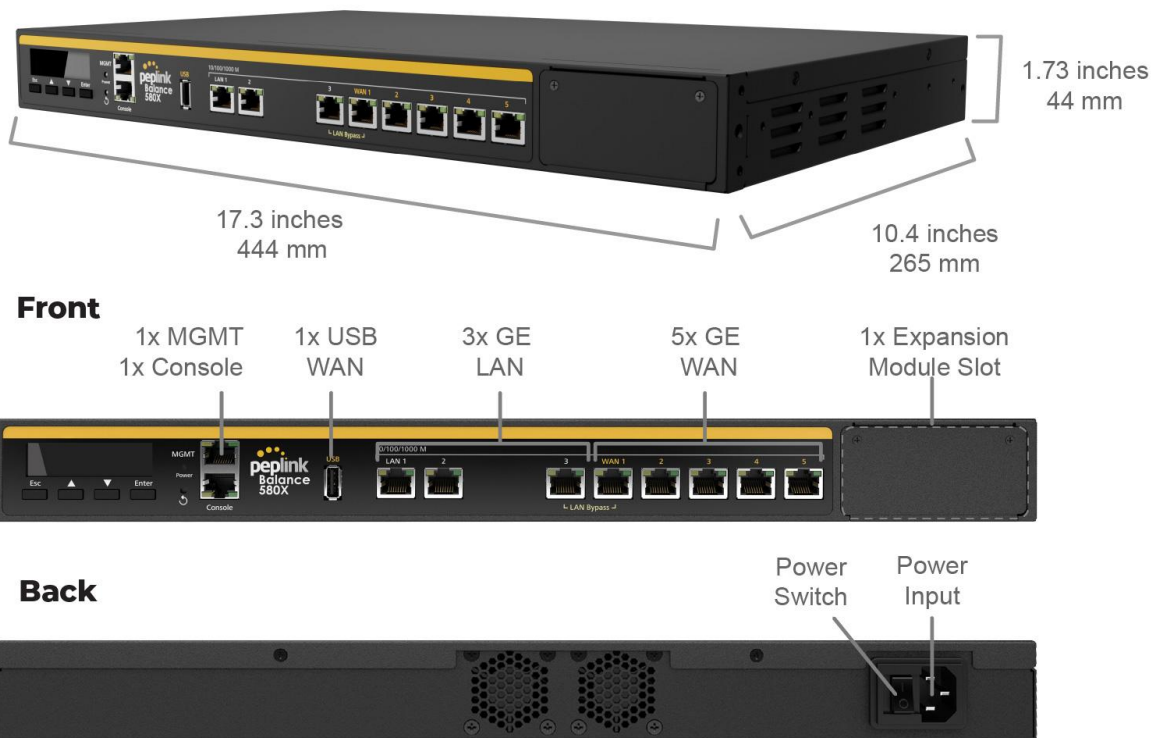
### Console and USB Ports

**Console Port** Reserved for engineering use

**USB Ports** For connecting a 4G/3G USB modem

## 6.15 Peplink Balance 580X

### 6.15.1 Panel Appearance



### 6.15.2 LED Indicators

The statuses indicated by the front panel LEDs are as follows:

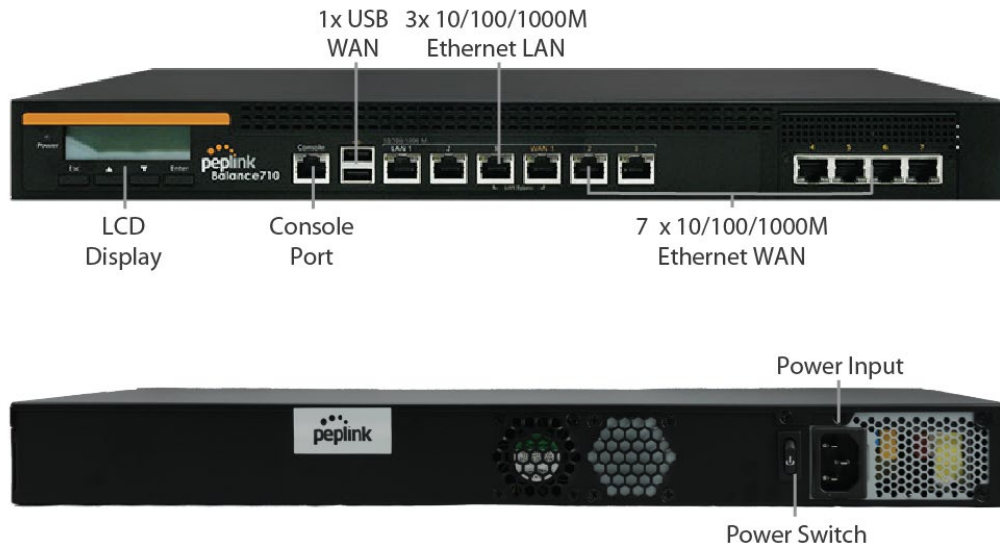
Power and Status Indicators	
<b>Power LED</b>	OFF – Power off
	GREEN – Power on

LAN Port, WAN 1 – 5 Ports	
<b>Right LED</b>	GREEN – 1000 Mbps
	OFF – 10 / 100 Mbps
<b>Left LED</b>	Solid – Port is connected without traffic
	Blinking – Data is transferring
	OFF – Port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

Console and USB Ports	
<b>Console Port</b>	Reserved for engineering use
<b>USB Ports</b>	For connecting a 4G/3G USB modem

## 6.16 Peplink Balance 710

### 6.16.1 Front Panel Appearance



### 6.16.2 LED Indicators

Status indicated in the front panel is as follows:

LED Indicator	
<b>Power LED</b>	OFF – Power off
	GREEN – Power on

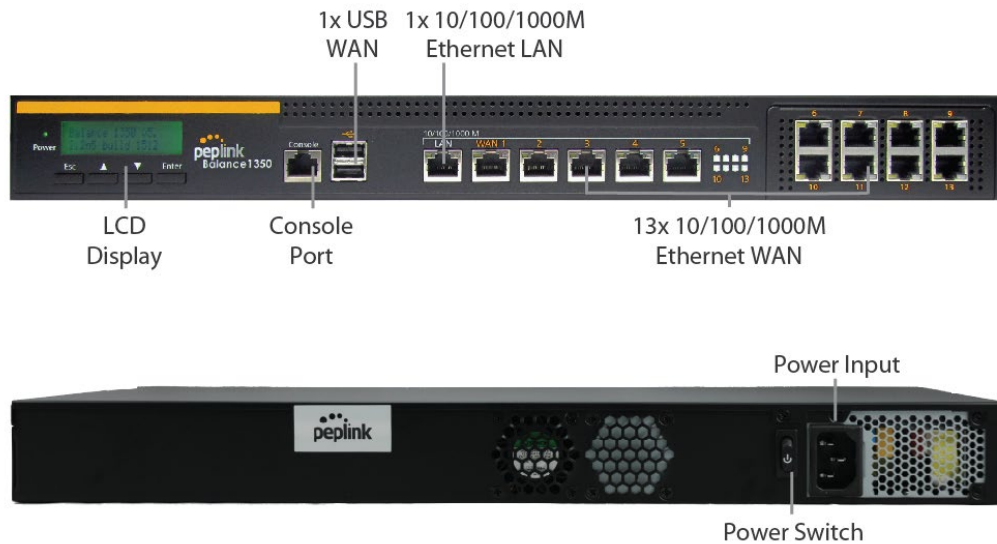
LAN Port, WAN 1 – 7 Ports	
<b>Green LED</b>	ORANGE – 1000 Mbps
	GREEN – 100 Mbps
	OFF – 10 Mbps
<b>Orange LED</b>	Solid – Port is connected without traffic
	Blinking – Data is transferring

	OFF – Port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

Console & USB Ports	
<b>Console Port</b>	Reserved for engineering use
<b>USB Ports</b>	For connecting a 4G/3G USB modem

## 6.17 Peplink Balance 1350

### 6.17.1 Panel Appearance



### 6.17.2 LED Indicators

Status indicated in the front panel is as follows:

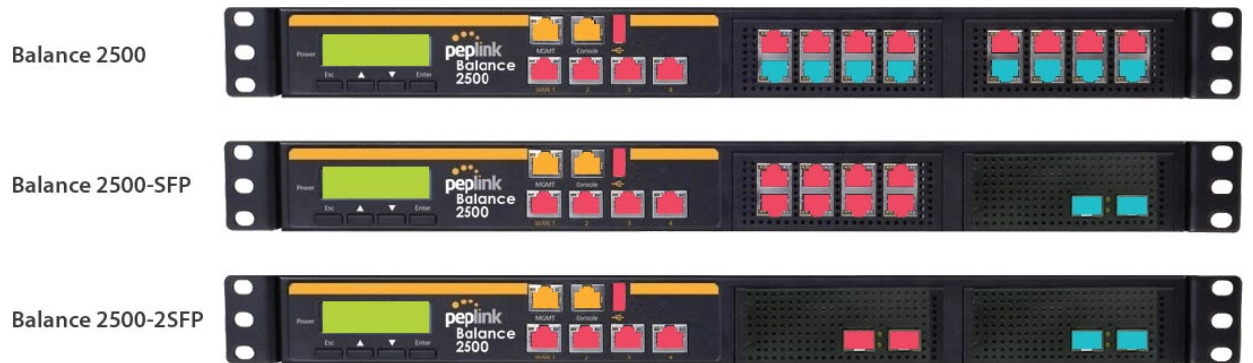
LED Indicator	
<b>Power LED</b>	OFF – Power off
	GREEN – Power on

LAN Port, WAN 1 – 13 Ports	
<b>Right LED</b>	ORANGE – 1000 Mbps
	GREEN – 100 Mbps
	OFF – 10 Mbps
<b>Left LED</b>	Solid – Port is connected without traffic
	Blinking – Data is transferring
	OFF – Port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

Console & USB Ports	
<b>Console Port</b>	Reserved for engineering use
<b>USB Ports</b>	For connecting a 4G/3G USB modem

## 6.18 Peplink Balance 2500

### 6.18.1 Panel Appearance



Power Switch      Power Inputs

### 6.18.2 LED Indicators

Status indicated in the front panel is as follows:

LED Indicator	
<b>Power LED</b>	OFF – Power off
	GREEN – Power on

### LAN and WAN Ports

<b>Right LED</b>	ORANGE – 1000 Mbps
	GREEN – 100 Mbps
	OFF – 10 Mbps
<b>Left LED</b>	Solid – Port is connected without traffic
	Blinking – Data is transferring
	OFF – Port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

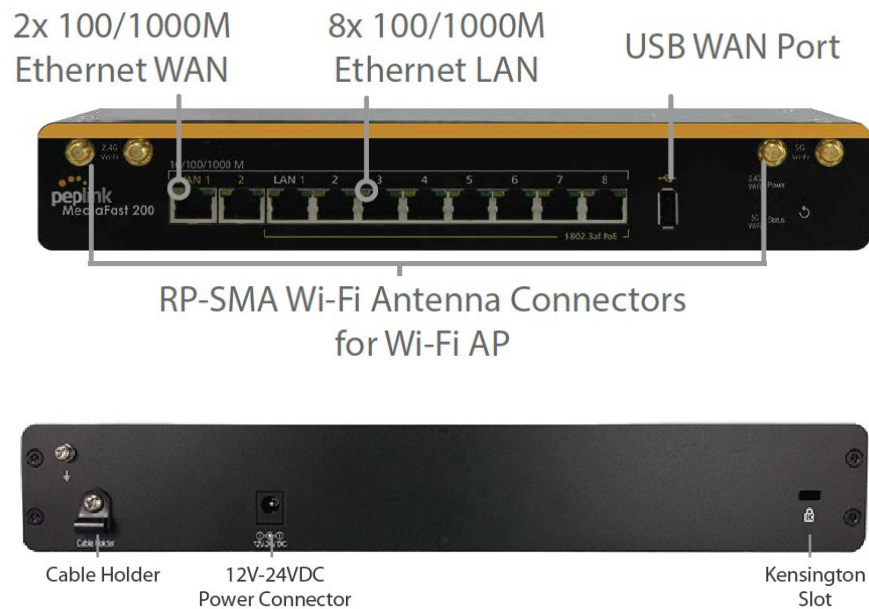
Console & USB Ports	
<b>Console Port</b>	Reserved for engineering use
<b>USB Ports</b>	For connecting a 4G/3G USB modem



## 7 Peplink MediaFast Overview

### 7.1 Peplink MediaFast 200

#### 7.1.1 Panel Appearance



#### 7.1.2 LED Indicators

Status indicated in the front panel is as follows:

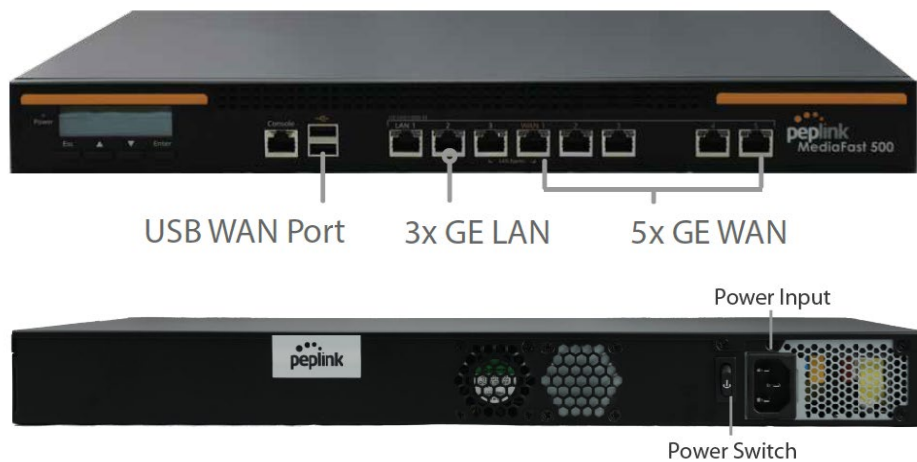
LED Indicator	
<b>Power LED</b>	OFF – Power off
	GREEN – Power on
LAN 1-3 Ports, WAN 1-5 Ports	
<b>Right LED</b>	ORANGE – 1000 Mbps
	GREEN – 100 Mbps

	OFF – 10 Mbps
<b>Left LED</b>	Solid – Port is connected without traffic
	Blinking – Data is transferring
	OFF – Port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

Console & USB Ports	
<b>Console Port</b>	Reserved for engineering use
<b>USB Ports</b>	For connecting 4G/3G USB modems

## 7.2 Peplink MediaFast 500

### 7.2.1 Panel Appearance



### 7.2.2 LED Indicators

Status indicated in the front panel is as follows:

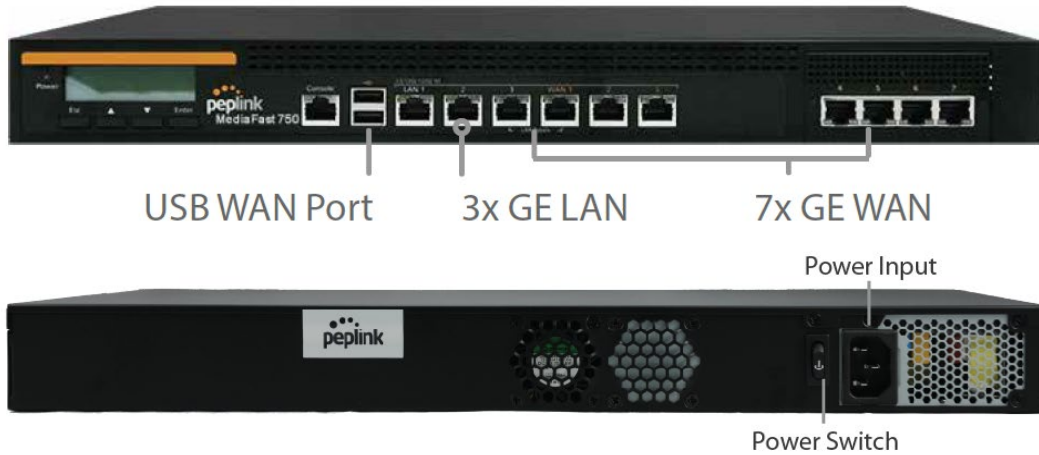
LED Indicator	
<b>Power LED</b>	OFF – Power off
	GREEN – Power on

LAN 1-3 Ports, WAN 1-5 Ports	
<b>Right LED</b>	ORANGE – 1000 Mbps
	GREEN – 100 Mbps
	OFF – 10 Mbps
<b>Left LED</b>	Solid – Port is connected without traffic
	Blinking – Data is transferring
	OFF – Port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

Console & USB Ports	
<b>Console Port</b>	Reserved for engineering use
<b>USB Ports</b>	For connecting 4G/3G USB modems

## 7.3 Peplink MediaFast 750

### 7.3.1 Panel Appearance



### 7.3.2 LED Indicators

Status indicated in the front panel is as follows:

LED Indicator	
<b>Power LED</b>	OFF – Power off
	GREEN – Power on

LAN 1-3 Ports, WAN 1-5 Ports	
<b>Right LED</b>	ORANGE – 1000 Mbps
	GREEN – 100 Mbps
	OFF – 10 Mbps
<b>Left LED</b>	Solid – Port is connected without traffic
	Blinking – Data is transferring
	OFF – Port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

Console & USB Ports	
<b>Console Port</b>	Reserved for engineering use

**USB Ports** For connecting 4G/3G USB modems

## 8 Peplink Flex-Module Supported Models

### 8.1 Peplink EPX

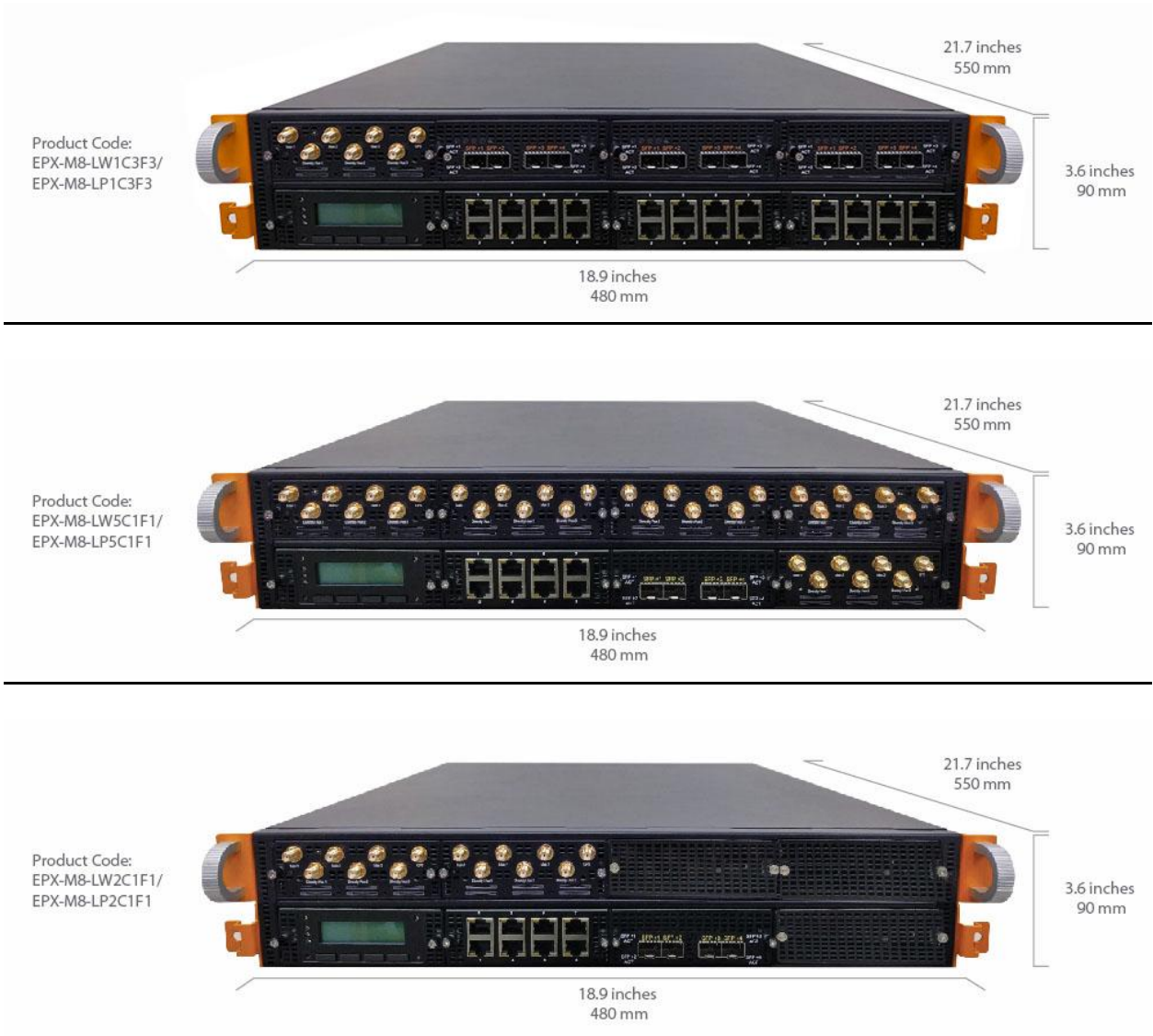
The EPX is a rapidly deployable, powerful, and versatile SD-WAN router that connects a wide range of WAN options from LTE-A, satellite modems, to fixed line networks this can be used simultaneously to allow bonding using our SpeedFusion technology.

With its modular construction, the EPX is suitable for any deployment.

#### 8.1.1 Main Chassis

EPX Main Chassis	
Power Input	AC Input 100V - 240V
Power Consumption (Main Chassis only)	215W
Throughput	30Gbps
PepVPN/SpeedFusion Throughput (256-bit AES)	2Gbps
Dimensions	18.9 x 21.7 x 3.6 inches - 480 x 550 x 90 mm
Weight (No Modules)	31.3 pounds - 14.2 kilograms
Operating Temperature	32° – 113°F (0° – 45°C)
Humidity	5% – 90% (non-condensing)
Certifications	FCC, IC, CE-RED EN 50155: Railway Applications EN 61373:1999 IEC 61373:1999 : Shock and Vibration Resistance EN 50121: Rolling Stock EMC, Signalling and Telecom Apparatus
Warranty	1-Year Limited Warranty

### 8.1.2 Panel Appearance



### 8.1.3 LED Indicators

Status indicated in the LAN/WAN port module is as follows:

Note: some EPX configurations are not shipped with this module

LED Indicator	
<b>Power LED</b>	OFF – Power off
	GREEN – Power on

LAN Port, WAN Ports	
<b>Right LED</b>	ORANGE – Enabled as WAN port
	GREEN – PoE enabled
	OFF – Port is not connected
<b>Left LED</b>	Solid – Port is connected without traffic
	Blinking – Data is transferring
	OFF – Port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

Console & USB Ports	
<b>Console Port</b>	CLI Console connection
<b>USB Ports</b>	For connecting a 4G/3G USB modem

## 8.2 Peplink SDX

The SDX is a Modular Enterprise Grade Router. In addition to popular features such as SpeedFusion SD-WAN and InControl centralized management, the SDX has an expandable module that you can



change according to your needs.

The SDX includes two integrated SFP+ WAN Ports, as well as eight PoE-enabled LAN Ports.

These ports are available no matter which module you use.

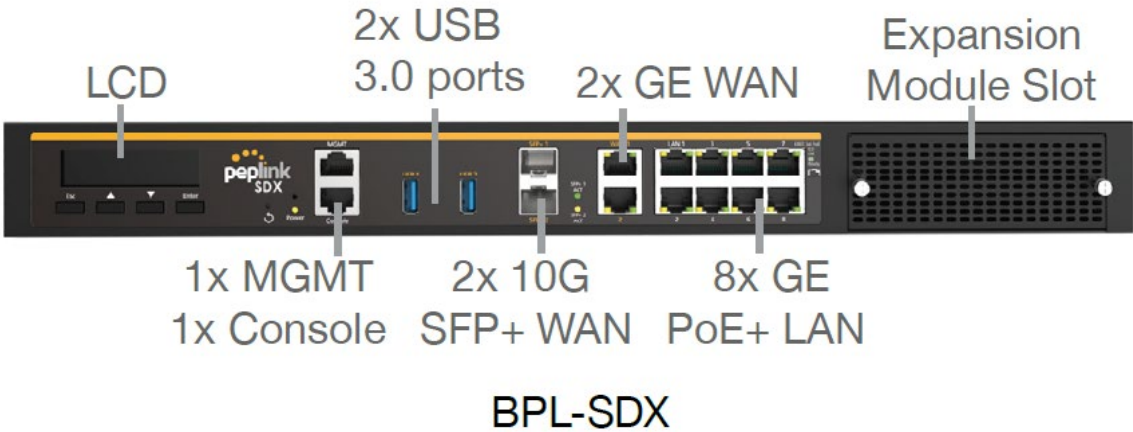
### 8.2.1 Main Chassis

<b>SDX Main Chassis</b>	
Power Input	AC Input 100V - 240V
Power Consumption	80W System* , 330W PoE+ Power Budget
Throughput	12 Gbps
PepVPN/SpeedFusion Throughput	No Encryption: 1 Gbps 256-bit AES: 600 Mbps
Dimensions	17.2 x 13.3 x 1.7 inches - 438 x 340 x 44 mm
Weight (No Modules)	11.7 pounds - 5.3 kilograms
Operating Temperature	32° – 104°F (0° – 40°C)
Humidity	5% – 90% (non-condensing)
Certifications	FCC, IC, CE

\* 80W consumption for the main chassis, 20W consumption for the optional module.

### 8.2.2 Panel Appearance

**Front:**



**Back:**



**8.2.3 LED Indicators**

LED Indicator	
<b>Power LED</b>	OFF – Power off
	GREEN – Power on

LAN Port, WAN Ports	
<b>Right LED</b>	GREEN – 1000 Mbps
	OFF – 10 Mbps / 100 Mbps or port is not connected
<b>Left LED</b>	Solid – Port is connected without traffic
	Blinking – Data is transferring
	OFF – Port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

Console, MGMT & USB Ports	
<b>Console Port</b>	CLI console connection
<b>USB Ports</b>	For connecting 4G/3G USB modems for additional WAN connections
<b>MGMT Port</b>	Management port

## 8.3 Peplink

## SDX

## Pro

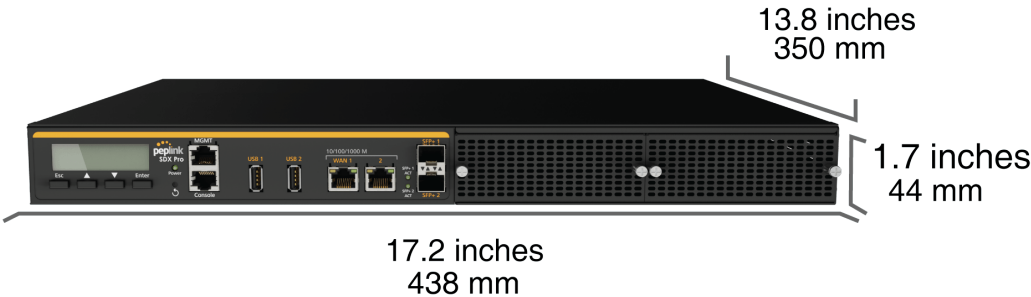
In addition to the power of the SDX, the SDX Pro offers greater flexibility and functionality. It has two FlexModule slots, enabling you to customize the device with different modules to suit any deployment. It supports edge computing so it can deliver websites, applications, and docker containers to connected devices.

### 8.3.1 Main Chassis

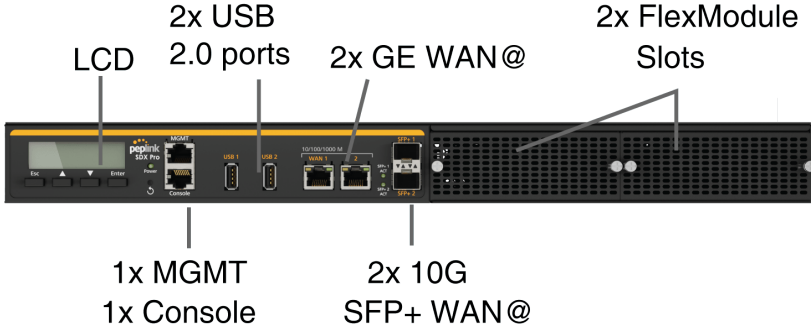
<b>SDX Pro Main Chassis</b>	
Power Input	AC Input 100V - 240V
Power Consumption	140W System* , 420W PoE+ Power Budget
Throughput	24 Gbps
PepVPN/SpeedFusion Throughput	No Encryption: 1 Gbps 256-bit AES: 600 Mbps
Dimensions	17.2 x 13.8 x 1.7 inches - 438 x 350 x 44 mm
Weight (No Modules)	15.9 pounds - 7.2 kilograms
Operating Temperature	32° – 104°F (0° – 40°C)
Humidity	10% – 85% (non-condensing)
Certifications	FCC, IC, CE

\* 140W consumption for the main chassis, 20W consumption for the optional module.

### 8.3.2 Panel Appearance



**Front**



**Back**



**8.3.3 LED Indicators**

LED Indicator	
<b>Power LED</b>	OFF – Power off
	GREEN – Power on

WAN Ports	
<b>Right LED</b>	GREEN – 1000 Mbps
	OFF – 10 Mbps / 100 Mbps or port is not connected
<b>Left LED</b>	Solid – Port is connected without traffic
	Blinking – Data is transferring
	OFF – Port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

Console, MGMT & USB Ports	
<b>Console Port</b>	CLI console connection
<b>USB Ports</b>	For connecting 4G/3G USB modems for additional WAN connections
<b>MGMT Port</b>	Management port

## 8.4 Flex Module Expansion Modules

### 3x LTE-A Module



<b>3x LTE-A Module</b>	
<b>Interface</b>	3x Embedded LTE-A Cellular Modems with Redundant SIM Slots
<b>Antenna Connectors</b>	6x SMA Cellular Antenna Connectors 1x SMA GPS Antenna Connector
<b>Power Consumption</b>	20W
<b>Weight</b>	0.83 pounds - 375 grams

**8x GE PoE Module**



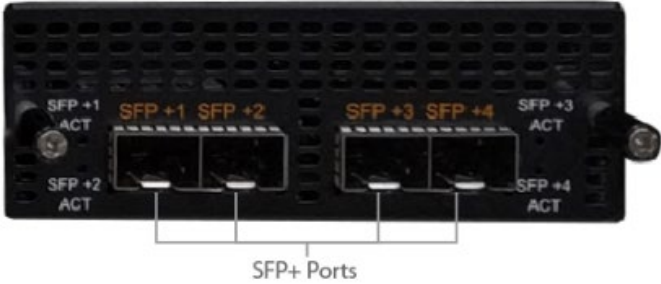
GE PoE+ Enabled  
Ethernet Ports

**8x GE PoE Module**

<b>Interface</b>	8x 10/100/1000M Ethernet Ports Capable of PoE+
<b>Power Consumption</b>	15W (105W max. with 802.3at/af PoE+ Output)
<b>Weight</b>	1.1 pounds 475 grams



4x SFP+ Module

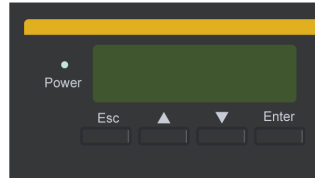


**4x SFP+ Module**

<b>Interface</b>	4x SFP+ Ports
<b>Power Consumption</b>	11W
<b>Weight</b>	0.83 pounds - 375 grams

## 9 LCD Display Menu

- > HA State: Master/Slave
  - > LAN IP
  - > VIP
- > System Status
  - > System
    - > Firmware ver. (shows firmware version)
    - > Serial number (shows serial number)
    - > System time (shows current time)
    - > System uptime (shows system uptime since last reboot)
    - > CPU load (shows current CPU loading, 0-100%)
    - > LAN
      - > Status (shows LAN port physical status)
      - > IP address (shows LAN IP address)
      - > Subnet mask (shows LAN subnet mask)
  - > Link status
    - > WAN1
    - > WAN2
    - > WAN3\* (shows Connected/Disconnected, IP address list)
  - > VPN status (shows Connected/Disconnected)
    - >VPN Profile 1
    - >VPN Profile 2
    - >...
    - >VPN Profile n
  - > Link usage
    - > Throughput in (shows transfer rate in Kbps)
      - > WAN1
      - > WAN2
      - > WAN3\*
    - > Throughput out (shows transfer rate in Kbps)
      - > WAN1
      - > WAN2
      - > WAN3\*
  - > Data Transferred (shows volume transferred since last reboot in MB)
    - > WAN1
    - > WAN2
    - > WAN3\*
- > Maintenance



```

> Reboot > Reboot? (Yes/No)                (to reboot the unit)
> Factory default > Factory default? (Yes/No) (to restore factory defaults)
> LAN config
  > Port speed                               (shows port speed: Auto, 10baseT-FD, 10baseT-HD,
    > LAN                                     100baseTx-FD, 100baseTx-HD, 1000baseTx-FD)
    > WAN1
    > WAN2
    > WAN3*

```

\*Layout continues as such for all available WAN ports

## 10 Installation

The following section details connecting the Peplink Balance to your network:

### 10.1 Preparation

Before installing your Peplink Balance, please prepare the following:

- At least one Internet/WAN access account
- For each network connection, one 10/100BaseT UTP cable with RJ45 connector, one 1000BaseT Cat5E UTP cable for the Gigabit port, or one USB modem for the USB WAN port
- A computer with the TCP/IP network protocol and a web browser installed— Supported browsers include Microsoft Internet Explorer 11 or above, Mozilla Firefox 24 or above, Apple Safari 7 or above, and Google Chrome 18 or above.

### 10.2 Constructing the Network

At the high level, construct the network according to the following steps:

1. With an Ethernet cable, connect a computer to one of the LAN ports on the Peplink Balance. For Peplink Balance models that support multiple connections, repeat with different cables connect up to 4 computers.
2. With another Ethernet cable, connect the WAN/broadband modem to one of the WAN ports on the Peplink Balance. Repeat using different cables to connect from two to 13 WAN/broadband connections or connect a USB modem to the USB WAN port.
3. Connect the provided power adapter or cord to the power connector on the Peplink Balance, and then plug the power adapter into a power outlet.

# 11 Basic Configuration

## 11.1 Connecting to the Web Admin Interface

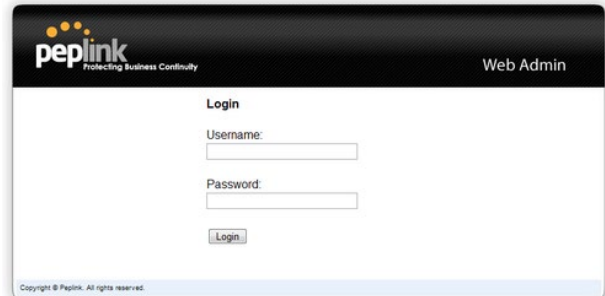
Start a web browser on a computer that is connected with the Peplink Balance through the LAN.

To connect to the web admin of the Peplink Balance, enter the following LAN IP address in the address field of the web browser:

`https://192.168.1.1`

(This is the default LAN IP address of the Peplink Balance.) Enter the following to access the web admin interface.

**Username:** admin  
**Password:** admin

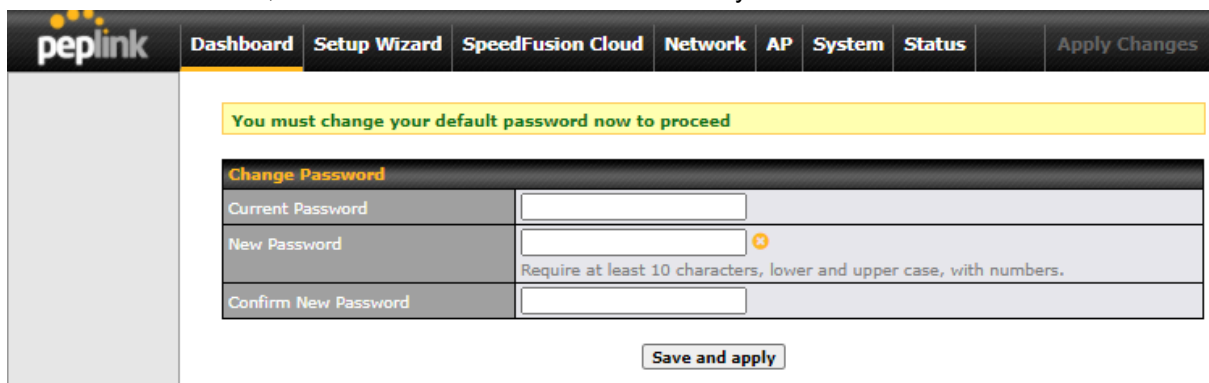


(This is the default admin user login of the Peplink Balance. )

You must change the default password on the first successful logon.

Password requirements are: A minimum of 10 lower AND upper case characters, including at least 1 number.

When HTTP is selected, the URL will be redirected to HTTPS by default.



After successful login, the **Dashboard** of the web admin interface will be displayed.

### Important Note

The **Save** button causes the changes to be saved. Configuration changes (e.g., WAN, LAN, admin settings, etc.) take effect after clicking the **Apply Changes** button on each page's top-right corner.

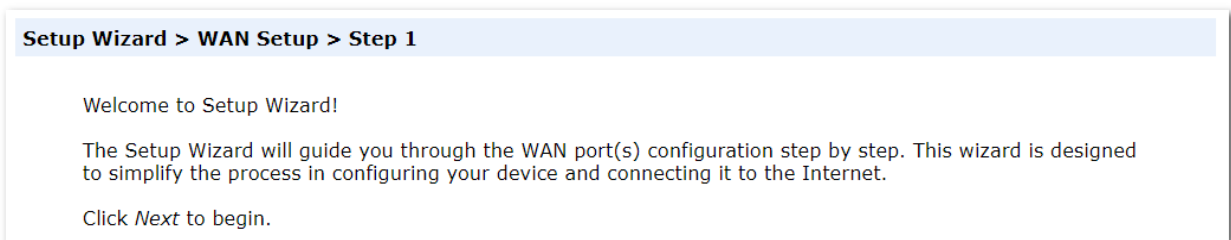
## 11.2 Configuration with the Setup Wizard

The Setup Wizard simplifies the task of configuring WAN connection(s) by guiding the configuration process step-by-step.

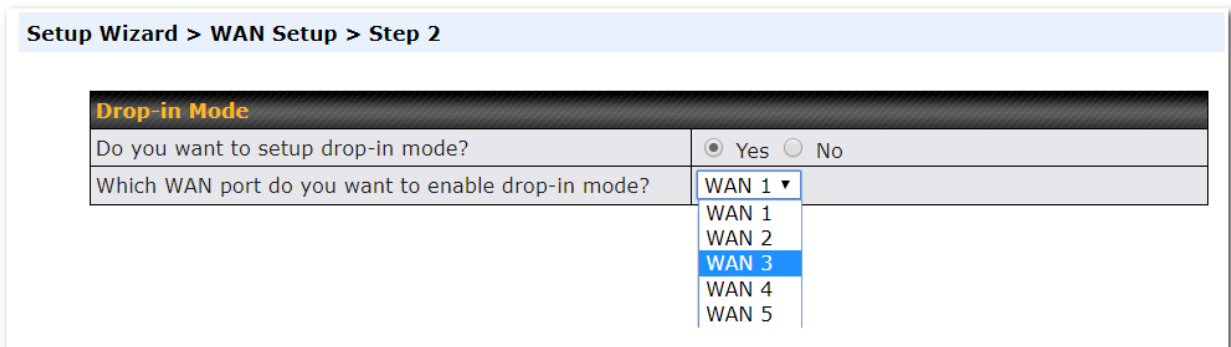
To begin, click **Setup Wizard** after connecting to the web admin interface.



Click **Next >>** to begin.



Select **Yes** if you want to set up drop-in mode using the Setup Wizard.



Click on the appropriate checkbox(es) to select the WAN connection(s) to be configured. If you have chosen to configure drop-in mode using the Setup Wizard, the WAN port to be configured in drop-in mode will be checked by default.

Setup Wizard > WAN Setup > Step 3

Choose the WAN port(s) to be configured.

WAN Ports <span style="float: right;">?</span>	
WAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>
WAN 2 (Drop-in)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
WAN 3	<input type="checkbox"/>
WAN 4	<input type="checkbox"/>
WAN 5	<input type="checkbox"/>
Mobile Internet	<input type="checkbox"/>

If drop-in mode is going to be configured, the setup wizard will move on to **Drop-in Settings**.

Setup Wizard > WAN Setup > Step 4


Enter the parameters of Drop-in Settings for WAN 2.

Drop-in Settings	
IP Address	<input type="text"/>
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0 (/24) ▼
Default Gateway	<input type="text"/>
DNS Servers	DNS server 1: <input type="text"/> DNS server 2: <input type="text"/>
Upload Bandwidth	1000 <input type="text"/> Mbps ▼
Download Bandwidth	1000 <input type="text"/> Mbps ▼

If you are not using drop-in mode, select the connection method for the WAN connection(s) from the following screen:

**Setup Wizard > WAN Setup > Step 4**

Choose a connection method for WAN 2.

Connection Method 	
Method	Select
Static IP	<input type="radio"/>
DHCP	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
PPPoE	<input type="radio"/>
Disable	<input type="radio"/>

Depending on the selection of connection type, further configuration may be needed. For example, PPPoE and static IP require additional settings for the selected WAN port. Please refer to **Section 13, Configuring the WAN Interface(s)** for details on setting up DHCP, static IP, and PPPoE.

If **Mobile Internet Connection** is checked, the setup wizard will move on to **Operator Settings**.

**Setup Wizard > WAN Setup > Step 4**


Select whether Operator Settings for Mobile Internet will be automatically detected or customized.

Operator Settings (for HSPA/EDGE/GPRS only) 	
Settings	Select
Auto	<input type="radio"/>
Custom	<input checked="" type="radio"/>

If **Custom Mobile Operator Settings** is selected, APN parameters are required. Some service providers may charge a fee for connecting to a different APN. Please consult your service provider for the correct settings.

**Setup Wizard > WAN Setup > Step 5**

Enter the parameters of Mobile Operator Settings for Mobile Internet.

Mobile Operator Settings 	
APN	<input type="text"/>
Login ID	<input type="text"/>
Password	<input type="text"/>
Dial Number	<input type="text"/>

Click on the appropriate check box(es) to select the preferred WAN connection(s). Connection(s) not selected in this step will be used as a backup only. Click **Next >>** to continue.

Setup Wizard > WAN Setup > Step 8

Choose the preferred WAN Port(s) that is to be used as primary connection. The port(s) not selected in this step will only be used when none of the connection of the preferred port is up.

Preferred WAN Port Selection	
Port	Preferred
WAN 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
WAN 2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Choose the time zone of your country/region. Check the box **Show all** to display all time zone options.

Setup Wizard > WAN Setup > Step 9

Choose time zone of your Country / Region.

Time Zone Settings	
Time Zone	(GMT) Greenwich Mean Time : Dublin, Edinburgh, Lisbon, Lo ▾ (GMT) Greenwich Mean Time : Dublin, Edinburgh, Lisbon, London (GMT+01:00) West Central Africa

Check in the following screen to make sure all settings have been configured correctly, and then click “**Save Settings**” to confirm.

Setup Wizard > WAN Setup > Final Step

Confirm the WAN connection(s) configuration below. Click *Back* to modify the configuration settings in previous steps. Click *Save Settings* when you are done.

Summary of WAN Port(s) Configuration	
WAN 1	
Connection Method	DHCP
Upload Bandwidth	1000 Mbps
Download Bandwidth	1000 Mbps
Preferred WAN Port(s)	
Ports	WAN 1 WAN 2
Time Zone Settings	
Time Zone	(GMT) Greenwich Mean Time : Dublin, Edinburgh, Lisbon, London



After finishing the last step in the setup wizard, click **Apply Changes** on the page header to allow the configuration changes to take effect.

## 12 SpeedFusion Cloud

With Peplink products, your device is able to connect to SpeedFusion Cloud without the use of a second endpoint. This service has wide access to a number of SpeedFusion endpoints hosted from around the world, providing your device with unbreakable connectivity wherever you are.\*



\*SpeedFusion Cloud is supported in firmware version 8.1.0 and above. SpeedFusion Cloud is a subscription basis. SpeedFusion Cloud license can be purchased at <https://store.peplink.com/> > **Cloud Solutions > SpeedFusion Cloud Service.**

### 12.1 Activate SpeedFusion Cloud Service

You are entitled to a 90-day free period with 100GB of SpeedFusion traffic ~~once~~ upon activation of the SpeedFusion Cloud service. This offer is limited to once per device. To get your activation key please visit SpeedFusion Cloud.

The screenshot shows the Peplink web interface for SpeedFusion Cloud. The navigation bar includes: Dashboard, Setup Wizard, SpeedFusion Cloud (highlighted), Network, AP, System, Status, and Apply Changes. The main content area is titled 'SpeedFusion Cloud' and includes the following steps:

- Get your activation key now**: Enjoy all the delicious features powered by SpeedFusion. (This button is highlighted with a red box in the original image.)
- Choose Cloud Location**: Which cloud you'd like to connect?
- Connect Clients to Cloud**: Select a cloud for your laptops, phones, or other devices.
- Link Wi-Fi to Cloud**: Create a Wi-Fi SSID that is dedicated for the cloud.

A 'Logout' button is visible in the bottom left corner of the main content area.

Enter an email address and device serial number, check **I'm not not a robot** then click **Submit**. You should receive a SpeedFusion Cloud license key via email after clicking the **Submit** button.

← → ↻ pavilion.peplink.com/speedfusioncloud/enrollment

peplink | PEPWAVE

## SpeedFusion Cloud Device Entry

Please input the following details

Email \*

Device Serial number(s) \*

I'm not a robot

- **Step 1 - Update to Firmware 8.1.0 or above**
- **Step 2 - Enter Serial Numbers:** Enter the serial numbers of the devices you wish to enable the SpeedFusion Cloud service for. This page supports 200 devices maximum, so if you have more than that, please use multiple entries.
- **Step 3 - Receive Confirmation Email:** Once registration is complete, we will send you a confirmation email including license keys.
- **Step 4 - Apply SpeedFusion License:**
  - With InControl: InControl will then push the license automatically.
  - Without InControl: Apply the license keys from the WebUI by navigating to System > Feature Add-ons.
- **Step 5 - Assign Traffic:** Use Outbound Policy to define the traffic you want to protect using the SpeedFusion Cloud.

Please Note: The 90-day free period with 100GB of SpeedFusion traffic will begin once the SpeedFusion cloud service has been activated. Each device can only apply once.

From **System > Features Add-ons**, paste the license key into the window and click on **Activate** once you have received the license key.

**PEPWAVE** Dashboard SpeedFusion Cloud Network Advanced AP System Status Apply Changes

**System**

- Admin Security
- Firmware
- Time
- Schedule
- Email Notification
- Event Log
- SNMP
- SMS Control
- InControl
- Configuration
- Feature Add-ons**
- Reboot

**Tools**

- Ping
- Traceroute
- Wake-on-LAN
- WAN Analysis

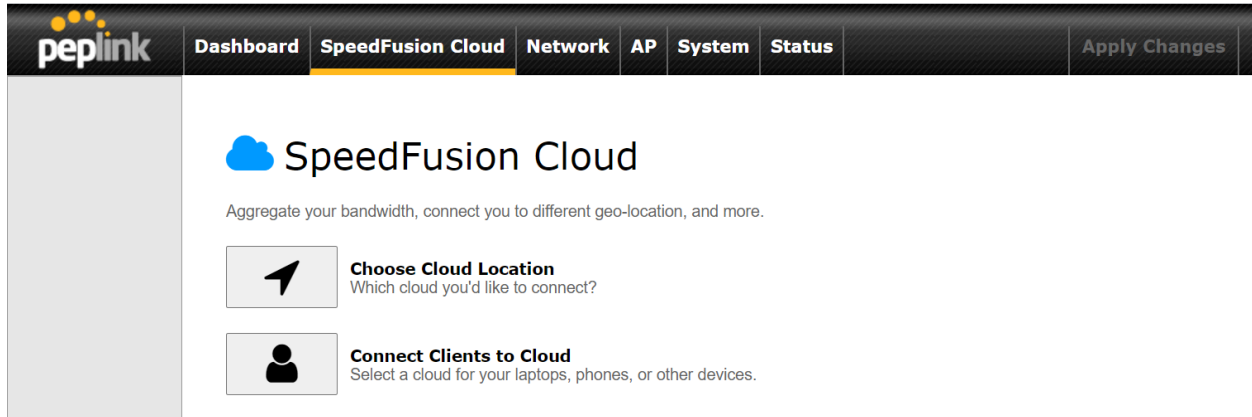
**Feature Activation**

Activation Key

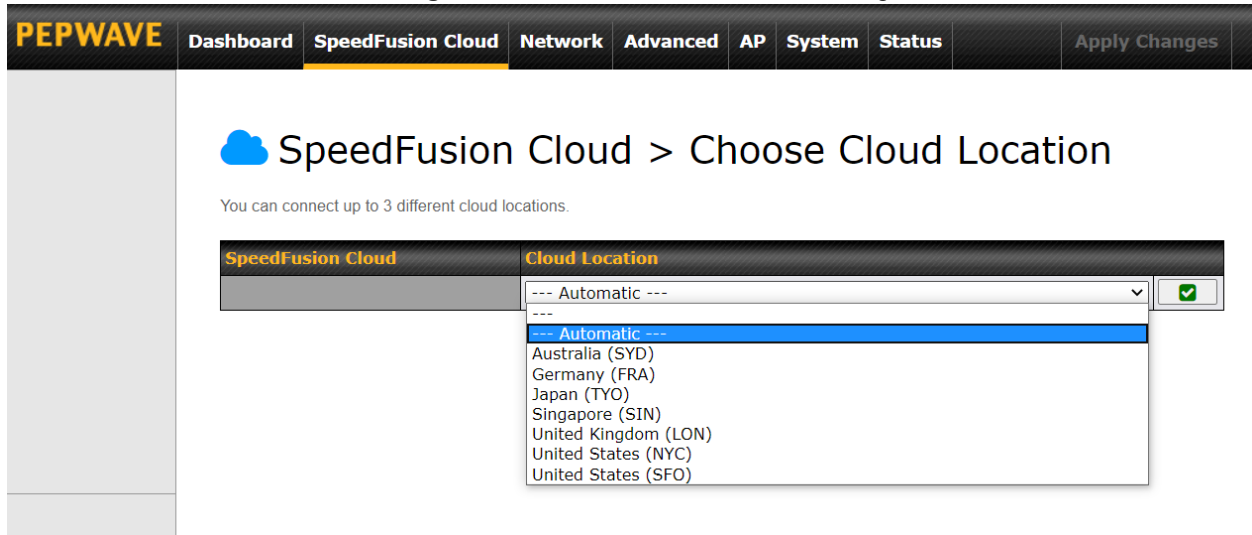
```
9629a523e54fe148f876e75cf95df776f248e248b618b618a6199b23e54fe148f876e75
cf95df776f351e640e450b618b618a310ae10a711a219a6249c5af05ef747c958e346e
248c95bf75df309a709a3199c7ae64cf34dd05ce540f947b66afa46e34db668f55dff5ff
75dff46f809dd4cef09be18a619d16bbfa96c3083b48a7d337ade187a5ce2e4e1
```

## 12.2 Enable SpeedFusion Cloud

Enable SpeedFusion Cloud from **SpeedFusion Cloud > Choose Cloud Location**.



Choose **Automatic** > Click on the **green tick button** to confirm the change.



SpeedFusion Cloud	Cloud Location
	--- Automatic ---
	---
	Australia (SYD)
	Germany (FRA)
	Japan (TYO)
	Singapore (SIN)
	United Kingdom (LON)
	United States (NYC)
	United States (SFO)


Click on **Apply Changes** to save the change.

PEPWAVE Dashboard **SpeedFusion Cloud** Network Advanced AP System Status **Apply Changes**

Saved! Changes will be effective after clicking the 'Apply Changes' button.

### SpeedFusion Cloud > Choose Cloud Location

You can connect up to 3 different cloud locations.


SpeedFusion Cloud	Cloud Location
SEC	--- Automatic --- 

PEPWAVE Dashboard **SpeedFusion Cloud** Network Advanced AP System Status **Apply Changes**

Changes applied successfully.

### SpeedFusion Cloud > Choose Cloud Location

You can connect up to 3 different cloud locations.

SpeedFusion Cloud	Cloud Location
SEC	--- Automatic --- 

By default, the router will build a SpeedFusion tunnel to the SpeedFusion Cloud

**PEPWAVE** Dashboard SpeedFusion Cloud Network Advanced AP System Status [Apply Changes](#)

**WAN Connection Status** ?

Priority 1 (Highest)  
Drag desired (Priority 1) connections here

Priority 2

1	Cellular 1	<span style="color: green;">■</span> Connected to MY MAXIS <span style="color: blue;">LTE-A</span>	<a href="#">Details</a>
2	Cellular 2	<span style="color: green;">■</span> Connected to MY MAXIS <span style="color: blue;">LTE-A</span>	<a href="#">Details</a>

Priority 3  
Drag desired (Priority 3) connections here

Disabled

1	WAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/> Disabled	<a href="#">Details</a>
2	WAN 2	<input type="checkbox"/> Disabled	<a href="#">Details</a>
3	Cellular 3	<input type="checkbox"/> Disabled	<a href="#">Details</a>
4	Cellular 4	<input type="checkbox"/> Disabled	<a href="#">Details</a>
5	Wi-Fi WAN	<input type="checkbox"/> Disabled	<a href="#">Details</a>
3	LAN 1 as WAN	<input type="checkbox"/> Disabled	<a href="#">Details</a>
4	LAN 2 as WAN	<input type="checkbox"/> Disabled	<a href="#">Details</a>
5	LAN 3 as WAN	<input type="checkbox"/> Disabled	<a href="#">Details</a>

---

**LAN Interface**

Router IP Address: 192.168.50.1

**Wi-Fi AP** ■ ON [Details](#)

PEPWAVE\_EBB4

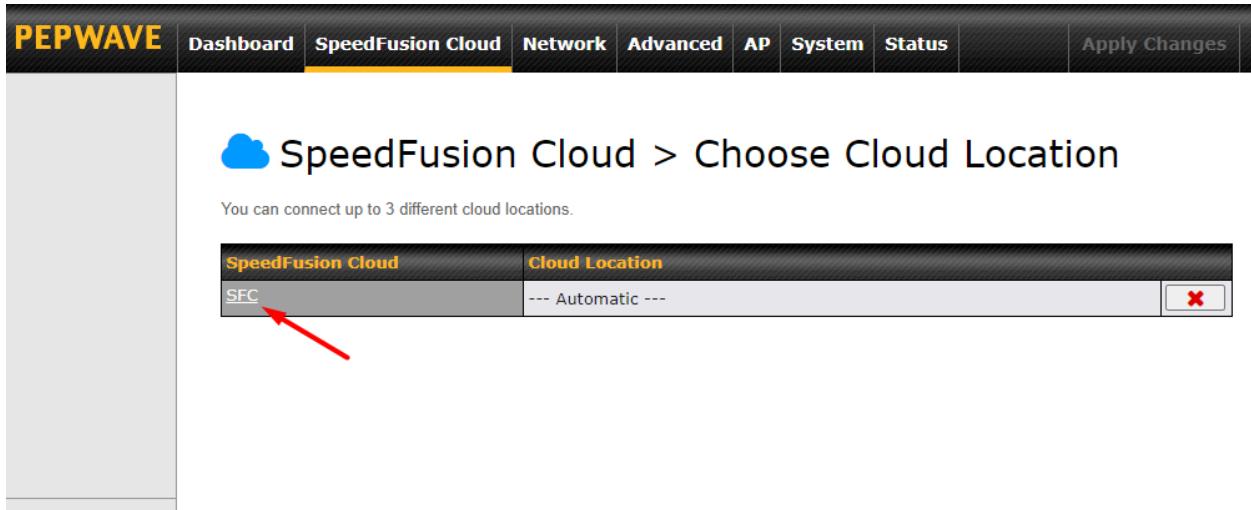
---

**SpeedFusion Cloud**

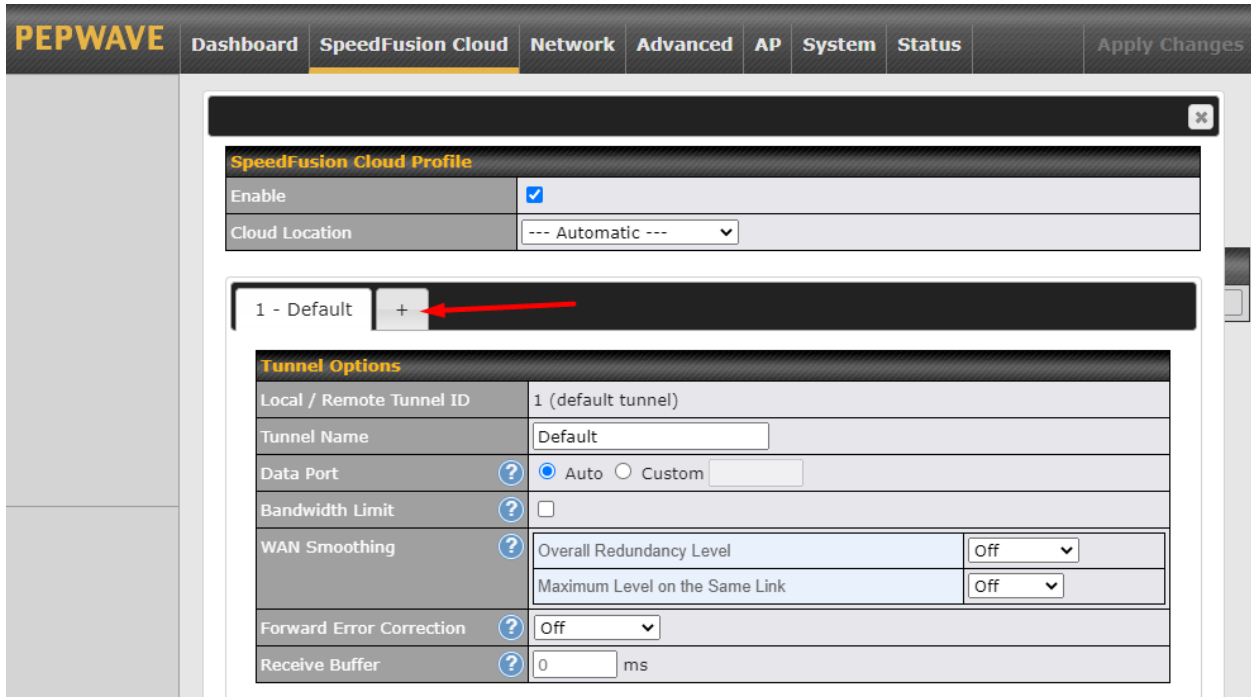
SFC ■ Established

Data usage allowance: 98.40 GB (Expiry date: Sep 01, 2020)

If you are running a latency sensitive service like video streaming or VOIP, a WAN Smoothing sub-tunnel can be created. Navigate to **Speedfusion Cloud > Choose a cloud location > SFC**.



A Speedfusion tunnel configuration window will pop out. Click on the + sign to create the WAN Smoothing sub-tunnel.



PEPWAVE Dashboard SpeedFusion Cloud Network Advanced AP System Status Apply Changes

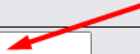
**SpeedFusion Cloud Profile**

Enable

Cloud Location --- Automatic ---

1 - Default 2 - WAN Smoo... x +

**Tunnel Options**

Local / Remote Tunnel ID	2	
Tunnel Name	WAN Smoothing 	
Data Port	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Auto <input type="radio"/> Custom <input type="text"/>	
Bandwidth Limit	<input type="checkbox"/>	
WAN Smoothing	Overall Redundancy Level	Normal <input type="text"/>
	Maximum Level on the Same Link	Normal <input type="text"/>
Forward Error Correction	Off <input type="text"/>	
Receive Buffer	0 ms	

Click on **Save** and **Apply Changes** to save the configuration. Now, the router has 2 Speedfusion tunnels to the Speedfusion Cloud.



**PEPWAVE** [Dashboard](#) [SpeedFusion Cloud](#) [Network](#) [Advanced](#) [AP](#) [System](#) [Status](#) [Apply Changes](#)

### WAN Connection Status ?

Priority 1 (Highest)  
Drag desired (Priority 1) connections here

Priority 2

1	Cellular 1	<span style="color: green;">■</span> Connected to MY MAXIS <span style="color: blue;">LTE-A</span>	<a href="#">Details</a>
2	Cellular 2	<span style="color: green;">■</span> Connected to MY MAXIS <span style="color: blue;">LTE-A</span>	<a href="#">Details</a>

Priority 3  
Drag desired (Priority 3) connections here

Disabled

1	WAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/> Disabled	<a href="#">Details</a>
2	WAN 2	<input type="checkbox"/> Disabled	<a href="#">Details</a>
3	Cellular 3	<input type="checkbox"/> Disabled	<a href="#">Details</a>
4	Cellular 4	<input type="checkbox"/> Disabled	<a href="#">Details</a>
5	Wi-Fi WAN	<input type="checkbox"/> Disabled	<a href="#">Details</a>
3	LAN 1 as WAN	<input type="checkbox"/> Disabled	<a href="#">Details</a>
4	LAN 2 as WAN	<input type="checkbox"/> Disabled	<a href="#">Details</a>
5	LAN 3 as WAN	<input type="checkbox"/> Disabled	<a href="#">Details</a>

---

### LAN Interface

Router IP Address: 192.168.50.1

### Wi-Fi AP ■ ON [Details](#)

PEPWAVE\_EBB4

---

### SpeedFusion Cloud

SFC (1 - Default)	<span style="color: green;">■</span> Established
SFC (2 - WAN Smoothing)	<span style="color: green;">■</span> Established

Data usage allowance: 98.40 GB (Expiry date: Sep 01, 2020)

Create an outbound policy to steer the internet traffic to go into Speedfusion Cloud. Please go to **Advanced > Outbound Policy**, click on **Add Rule** to create a new outbound policy.

**PEPWAVE** Dashboard SpeedFusion Cloud Network **Advanced** AP System Status Apply Changes

- Advanced
  - SpeedFusion
  - IPsec VPN
  - GRE Tunnel
  - Outbound Policy**
  - Port Forwarding
- NAT Mappings
- QoS
  - User Groups
  - Bandwidth Control
  - Application
- Firewall
  - Access Rules
  - Content Blocking
- Routing Protocols
  - OSPF & RIPv2
  - BGP
- Remote User Access
- Misc. Settings
  - High Availability
  - RADIUS Server
  - Certificate Manager
  - Service Forwarding
  - Service Passthrough
  - GPS Forwarding
  - NTP Server
  - Grouped Networks

**Outbound Policy** Custom ?

**Add a New Custom Rule** ? X

Service Name	to_internet																															
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>																															
Source	IP Address	192.168.50.10																														
Destination	Any																															
Protocol	Any	← :: Protocol Selection ::																														
Algorithm	Priority																															
Priority Order	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Highest Priority</th> <th>Not In Use</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Cloud: SFC (1 - Defau...</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Cloud: SFC (2 - WAN ...</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>WAN: WAN 1</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>WAN: WAN 2</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>WAN: Cellular 1</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>WAN: Cellular 2</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>WAN: Cellular 3</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>WAN: Cellular 4</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>WAN: USB</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>WAN: Wi-Fi WAN</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>WAN: LAN 1 as WAN</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>WAN: LAN 2 as WAN</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>WAN: LAN 3 as WAN</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Lowest Priority</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Highest Priority	Not In Use	Cloud: SFC (1 - Defau...		Cloud: SFC (2 - WAN ...		WAN: WAN 1		WAN: WAN 2		WAN: Cellular 1		WAN: Cellular 2		WAN: Cellular 3		WAN: Cellular 4		WAN: USB		WAN: Wi-Fi WAN		WAN: LAN 1 as WAN		WAN: LAN 2 as WAN		WAN: LAN 3 as WAN		Lowest Priority		
Highest Priority	Not In Use																															
Cloud: SFC (1 - Defau...																																
Cloud: SFC (2 - WAN ...																																
WAN: WAN 1																																
WAN: WAN 2																																
WAN: Cellular 1																																
WAN: Cellular 2																																
WAN: Cellular 3																																
WAN: Cellular 4																																
WAN: USB																																
WAN: Wi-Fi WAN																																
WAN: LAN 1 as WAN																																
WAN: LAN 2 as WAN																																
WAN: LAN 3 as WAN																																
Lowest Priority																																
When No Connections are Available	Drop the Traffic																															
Terminate Sessions on Connection Recovery	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable																															

Save Cancel

**Outbound Policy** ?

Custom ✎

---

**Rules** (👤 Drag and drop rows by the left to change rule order) ?

Service	Algorithm	Source	Destination	Protocol / Port	
PepVPN / OSPF / BGP / RIPv2 Routes SpeedFusion Cloud Routes					
to internet	Priority VPN: SFC (1 - Def...	IP Address 192.168.50.10	Any	Any	✖
HTTPS Persistence	Persistence (Src) (Auto)	Any	Any	TCP 443	✖
Default	(Auto)				
<input type="button" value="Add Rule"/>					

---

**Expert Mode** ?

Enabled ✎

## 12.3 Connect Clients to Cloud

SpeedFusion Cloud provides a convenient way to route the LAN client to the cloud. From **SpeedFusion Cloud > Connect Clients to Cloud**.

**SpeedFusion Cloud**

Aggregate your bandwidth, connect you to different geo-location, and more.

**Choose Cloud Location**  
Which cloud you'd like to connect?

**Connect Clients to Cloud**  
Select a cloud for your laptops, phones, or other devices.

Choose a client from the drop down list > Click + > Save > Apply Changes.

peplink Dashboard **SpeedFusion Cloud** Network AP System Status Apply Changes

Saved! Changes will be effective after clicking the 'Apply Changes' button.

### SpeedFusion Cloud > Connect Clients to Cloud

Traffic from the selected clients will be redirected to the assigned cloud.

SpeedFusion Cloud			
Automatic	Client	IP Address	
	MY-Room-A-DellPC (40:23:43:26:F7:93)	192.168.52.179	✖
	---		+

Save




## 12.4 Link Wi-Fi to Cloud

SpeedFusion Cloud provides a convenient way to route the Wi-Fi client to the cloud from **SpeedFusion Cloud > Link Wi-Fi to Cloud**. This option is available for **Balance 20X, Balance 30 Pro, and Balance One**.

peplink Dashboard Setup Wizard **SpeedFusion Cloud** Network AP System Status

### SpeedFusion Cloud

Aggregate your bandwidth, connect you to different geo-location, and more.

-  **Choose Cloud Location**  
Which cloud you'd like to connect?
-  **Connect Clients to Cloud**  
Select a cloud for your laptops, phones, or other devices.
-  **Link Wi-Fi to Cloud**  
Create a Wi-Fi SSID that is dedicated for the cloud.

Create a new SSID for SpeedFusion Cloud. The new SSID will inherit all settings from one of the existing SSIDs including the Security Policy. Then click **Save** follow by **Apply Changes**.

peplink Dashboard Setup Wizard **SpeedFusion Cloud** Network AP System Status Apply Changes

## SpeedFusion Cloud > Link Wi-Fi to Cloud

The new SSID will inherit all settings from the existing SSID including the Security Policy.

SpeedFusion Cloud			
Automatic	Reference SSID	SSID for Cloud	
	Home	Home_SFC	✖
	---		+

Save

SpeedFusion Cloud SSID will be shown on **Dashboard**.

**LAN Interface**

Router IP Address: 192.168.54.1

**Wi-Fi AP** ON ▾ Details

📶 HomeBunker	📶 Home	📶 ☁ Home_SFC	
--------------	--------	--------------	--


## 13 Network Tab

### 13.1 WAN

From **Network>WAN**, choose a WAN connection by clicking it.

WAN Connection Settings	
WAN Connection Name	WAN 1
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Always on ▼
Connection Method	<input type="text" value="DHCP"/> ▼
Routing Mode	<input checked="" type="radio"/> NAT
Hostname (Optional)	<input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Use custom hostname
DNS Servers	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Obtain DNS server address automatically <input type="checkbox"/> Use the following DNS server address(es) DNS Server 1: <input type="text"/> DNS Server 2: <input type="text"/>
Connection Priority	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Always-on (Priority 1) <input type="radio"/> Backup
Independent from Backup WANs	<input type="checkbox"/>
Reply to ICMP Ping	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No
Upload Bandwidth	<input type="text" value="1"/> Gbps ▼
Download Bandwidth	<input type="text" value="1"/> Gbps ▼

You can also enable IPv6 support in this section

IPv6
Disabled <span style="float: right;"></span>

### WAN Connection Settings (Ethernet)

Clicking an Ethernet WAN connection will result in the following screen:

## WAN Connection Settings

**WAN Connection Name** Enter a name to represent this WAN connection.

**Enable** This setting enables the WAN connection. If schedules have been defined, you will be able to select a schedule to apply to the connection.

There are five possible connection methods for Ethernet WAN:

**• DHCP**

Connection Method	<input style="font-size: 0.8em; vertical-align: middle;" type="button" value="?"/> DHCP
Routing Mode	<input checked="" type="radio"/> NAT
Hostname (Optional)	<input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Use custom hostname

**• Static IP**

Connection Method	<input style="font-size: 0.8em; vertical-align: middle;" type="button" value="?"/> Static IP
Routing Mode	<input checked="" type="radio"/> NAT
IP Address	<input type="text"/>
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0 (/24)
Default Gateway	<input type="text"/>

**• PPPoE**

Connection Method	<input style="font-size: 0.8em; vertical-align: middle;" type="button" value="?"/> PPPoE
Routing Mode	<input checked="" type="radio"/> NAT
PPPoE User Name	<input type="text"/>
PPPoE Password	<input type="password"/>
Confirm PPPoE Password	<input type="password"/>
Service Name (Optional)	<input type="text"/> <small>Leave it blank unless it is provided by ISP</small>
IP Address (Optional)	<input type="text"/> <small>Leave it blank unless it is provided by ISP</small>
Keep-Alive Interval	<input type="text" value="5"/> seconds(s)
Keep-Alive Retry	<input type="text" value="5"/>

**• L2TP**

Connection Method	<input style="font-size: 0.8em; vertical-align: middle;" type="button" value="?"/> L2TP
Routing Mode	<input checked="" type="radio"/> NAT
L2TP User Name	<input type="text"/>
L2TP Password	<input type="password"/>
Confirm L2TP Password	<input type="password"/>
Server IP Address / Host	<input type="text"/>
Address Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Dynamic IP <input type="radio"/> Static IP

**Connection Method**

- GRE

Connection Method	<input type="text" value="GRE"/>
Routing Mode	<input checked="" type="radio"/> NAT
WAN IP Address	<input type="text"/>
WAN Subnet Mask	<input type="text" value="255.255.255.0 (/24)"/>
WAN Default Gateway	<input type="text"/>
Remote GRE Host	<input type="text"/>
Tunnel Local IP Address	<input type="text"/>
Tunnel Remote IP Address	<input type="text"/>
Outgoing NAT IP Address	<input type="text"/>

The connection method and details are determined by, and can be obtained from the ISP. See the following sections for details on each connection method. DNS server settings can be configured in the corresponding menu for each connection method.

### Routing Mode

This field shows that **NAT** (network address translation) will be applied to the traffic routed over this WAN connection. **IP Forwarding** is available when you click the link in the help text.

### Connection Priority

This option allows you to configure the WAN connection whether for normal daily usage or as a backup connection only.

If **Always-on** is chosen, the WAN connection will be kept on continuously, regardless of the priority of other WAN connections.

If **Backup** is chosen, the WAN connection will depend on other WAN connections. It will not be used when one or more higher priority dependent WAN connections are connected.

### Independent from Backup WANs

If this is checked, the connection will be working independent from other Backup WAN connections. Those in Backup Priority will ignore the status of this WAN connection, and will be used when none of the other higher priority connections are available.

### Reply to ICMP PING

If the checkbox is **unticked**, this option is disabled and the system will not reply to any ICMP ping echo requests to the WAN IP addresses of this WAN connection.

Default: **ticked** (Yes)

### Upload Bandwidth

This field refers to the maximum upload speed.

This value is referenced when default weight is chosen for outbound traffic and traffic prioritization. A correct value can result in effective traffic prioritization and efficient use of upstream bandwidth.

### Download Bandwidth

This field refers to the maximum download speed.

Default weight control for outbound traffic will be adjusted according to this value.



## WAN Connection Settings (Cellular)

Clicking an Ethernet WAN connection will result in the following screens:

WAN Connection Settings	
WAN Connection Name	Cellular
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Routing Mode <span>?</span>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> NAT
DNS Servers	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Obtain DNS server address automatically <input type="checkbox"/> Use the following DNS server address(es) DNS Server 1: <input type="text"/> DNS Server 2: <input type="text"/>
IP Passthrough <span>?</span>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Connection Priority	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Always-on (Priority 1) <input type="radio"/> Backup
Independent from Backup WANs <span>?</span>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Standby State <span>?</span>	<input type="radio"/> Remain connected <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disconnect
Idle Disconnect	<input type="checkbox"/>
Reply to ICMP Ping <span>?</span>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No

Connection Settings	
<b>WAN Connection Name</b>	Indicate a name you wish to give this WAN connection
<b>Enable</b>	Click the checkbox to toggle the on and off state of this connection.
<b>Routing Mode</b>	<p>This option allows you to select the routing method to be used in routing IP frames via the WAN connection. The mode can be either NAT (Network Address Translation) or IP Forwarding.</p> <p>In the case if you need to choose IP Forwarding for your scenario. Click the <span>?</span> button to enable IP Forwarding.</p>
<b>DNS Servers</b>	<p>Each ISP may provide a set of DNS servers for DNS lookups. This setting specifies the DNS (Domain Name System) servers to be used when a DNS lookup is routed through this connection.</p> <p>Selecting Obtain DNS server address automatically results in the DNS servers assigned by the WAN DHCP server being used for outbound DNS lookups over the connection. (The DNS servers are obtained along with the WAN IP address assigned by the DHCP server.) When Use the following DNS server address(es) is selected, you may enter custom DNS server addresses for this WAN connection into the DNS server 1 and DNS server 2 fields.</p>

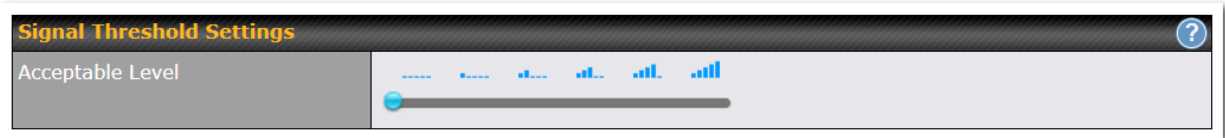
<b>IP Passthrough</b>	When this IP Passthrough option is active, after the ethernet WAN connection is up, the router's DHCP server will offer the connection's IP address to one LAN client. All incoming or outgoing traffic will be routed without NAT.
<b>Connection Priority</b>	<p>This option allows you to configure the WAN connection whether for normal daily usage or as a backup connection only.</p> <p>If <b>Always-on</b> is chosen, the WAN connection will be kept on continuously, regardless of the priority of other WAN connections.</p> <p>If <b>Backup</b> is chosen, the WAN connection will depend on other WAN connections. It will not be used when one or more higher priority dependent WAN connections are connected.</p>
<b>Independent from Backup WANs</b>	If this is checked, the connection will be working independent from other Backup WAN connections. Those in Backup Priority will ignore the status of this WAN connection, and will be used when none of the other higher priority connections are available.
<b>Idle Disconnect</b>	If this is checked, the connection will disconnect when idle after the configured Time value. This option is disabled by default.
<b>Reply to ICMP PING</b>	<p>If the checkbox is <b>unticked</b>, this option is disabled and the system will not reply to any ICMP ping echo requests to the WAN IP addresses of this WAN connection.</p> <p>Default: <b>ticked</b> (Yes)</p>

Cellular Settings <span style="float: right;">?</span>		
SIM Card	<input type="radio"/> Both SIMs <input type="radio"/> SIM A Only <input type="radio"/> SIM B Only	
Preferred SIM Card	<input type="radio"/> No Preference <input type="radio"/> SIM A <input type="radio"/> SIM B	
	SIM Card A	SIM Card B
Network Selection <span>?</span>	<input type="radio"/> Auto <input type="radio"/> Manual	<input type="radio"/> Auto <input type="radio"/> Manual
LTE/3G <span>?</span>	LTE Only ▾	LTE Only ▾
Optimal Network Discovery <span>?</span>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Band Selection	Auto ▾	Auto ▾
Data Roaming	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Authentication	Auto ▾	Auto ▾
Operator Settings	<input type="radio"/> Auto <input type="radio"/> Custom	<input type="radio"/> Auto <input type="radio"/> Custom
APN	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
Username	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
Password	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
Confirm Password	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
SIM PIN (Optional) <span>?</span>	<input type="text"/> (Confirm)	<input type="text"/> (Confirm)
Bandwidth Allowance Monitor <span>?</span>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable
Action <span>?</span>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Receive email notification <input type="checkbox"/> Reserve for management traffic when usage hits 100% <input type="checkbox"/> Disconnect when usage hits 100%	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Receive email notification <input type="checkbox"/> Reserve for management traffic when usage hits 100% <input type="checkbox"/> Disconnect when usage hits 100%
Start Day <span>?</span>	On 26th ▾ of each month	On 21st ▾ of each month
Monthly Allowance <span>?</span>	4 <input type="text"/> GB ▾	22 <input type="text"/> GB ▾

Cellular Settings	
<b>SIM Card</b>	Indicate which SIM card this cellular WAN will use. Only applies to cellular WAN with redundant SIM cards.
<b>Preferred SIM Card</b>	If both cards were enabled on the above field, then you can designate the priority of the SIM card slots here.
<b>LTE/3G</b>	This drop-down menu allows restricting cellular to particular band. Click the  button to enable the selection of specific bands.
<b>Optimal Network</b>	Cellular WANs by default will only handover from 3G to LTE network when there is no active data traffic, enable this option will make it run the handover procedures after fallback to 3G for

<b>Discovery</b>	a defined effective period, even this may interrupt the connectivity for a short while.
<b>Band Selection</b>	When set to <b>Auto</b> , band selection allows for automatically connecting to available, supported bands (frequencies) When set to Manual, you can manually select the bands (frequencies) the SIM will connect to.
<b>Data Roaming</b>	This checkbox enables data roaming on this particular SIM card. When data roaming is enabled this option allows you to select in which countries the SIM has a data connection. The option is configured by using MMC (country) codes. Please check your service provider's data roaming policy before proceeding.
<b>Authentication</b>	Choose from <b>PAP Only</b> or <b>CHAP Only</b> to use those authentication methods exclusively. Select <b>Auto</b> to automatically choose an authentication method.
<b>Operator Settings</b>	This setting allows you to configure the APN settings of your connection. If <b>Auto</b> is selected, the mobile operator should be detected automatically. The connected device will be configured and connection will be made automatically. If there is any difficulty in making connections, you may select <b>Custom</b> to enter your carrier's <b>APN, Login, Password, and Dial Number</b> settings manually. The correct values can be obtained from your carrier. The default and recommended setting is <b>Auto</b> .
<b>APN / Login / Password / SIM PIN</b>	When <b>Auto</b> is selected, the information in these fields will be filled automatically. Select <b>Custom</b> to customize these parameters. The parameter values are determined by and can be obtained from the ISP.
<b>Bandwidth Allowance Monitor</b>	Check the box Enable to enable bandwidth usage monitoring on this WAN connection for each billing cycle. When this option is not enabled, bandwidth usage of each month is still being tracked but no action will be taken.
<b>Action</b>	If email notification is enabled, you will be notified by email when usage hits 75% and 95% of the monthly allowance. If <b>Disconnect when usage hits 100% of monthly allowance</b> is checked, this WAN connection will be disconnected automatically when the usage hits the monthly allowance. It will not resume connection unless this option has been turned off or the usage has been reset when a new billing cycle starts.
<b>Start Day</b>	This option allows you to define which day of the month each billing cycle begins.
<b>Monthly Allowance</b>	This field is for defining the maximum bandwidth usage allowed for the WAN connection each month.

## Signal Threshold Settings

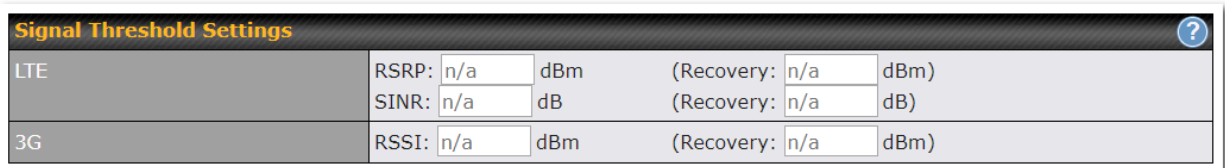


If signal threshold is defined, this connection will be treated as down when a weaker than threshold signal is determined.

The following values are used by the threshold scale:

	0 bars	1 bar	2 bars	3 bars	4 bars	5 bars
<b>LTE / RSRP</b>	-140	-128	-121	-114	-108	-98
<b>3G / RSSI</b>	-120	-100	-95	-90	-85	-75

To define the threshold manually using specific signal strength values, please click on the question Mark and the following field will be visible.



## WAN Connection Settings (USB)


WAN Connection Settings	
WAN Connection Name	Mobile Internet <span style="float: right;">Help <a href="#">Close</a></span>
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Always on <span style="float: right;">To configure USB port for supported Ethernet adapter, click <a href="#">here</a></span>
DNS Servers	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Obtain DNS server address automatically <input type="checkbox"/> Use the following DNS server address(es) DNS Server 1: <input type="text"/> DNS Server 2: <input type="text"/>
Connection Priority	<input type="radio"/> Always-on (Priority 1) <input checked="" type="radio"/> Backup <span style="float: right;">Priority 2 <input type="text"/></span>
Standby State	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Remain connected <input type="radio"/> Disconnect
Idle Disconnect	<input type="checkbox"/>
Reply to ICMP Ping	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No

WAN Connection Settings	
<b>WAN Connection Name</b>	Indicate a name you wish to give this WAN connection
<b>Enable</b>	This setting enables the WAN connection. If schedules have been defined, you will be able to select a schedule to apply to the connection.
<b>DNS Server</b>	<p>Each ISP may provide a set of DNS servers for DNS lookups. This setting specifies the DNS (Domain Name System) servers to be used when a DNS lookup is routed through this connection.</p> <p>Selecting <b>Obtain DNS server address automatically</b> results in the DNS servers assigned by the WAN DHCP server being used for outbound DNS lookups over the connection. (The DNS servers are obtained along with the WAN IP address assigned by the DHCP server.) When <b>Use the following DNS server address(es)</b> is selected, you may enter custom DNS server addresses for this WAN connection into the <b>DNS server 1</b> and <b>DNS server 2</b> fields.</p>
<b>Connection Priority</b>	<p>This option allows you to configure the WAN connection whether for normal daily usage or as a backup connection only.</p> <p>If <b>Always-on</b> is chosen, the WAN connection will be kept on continuously, regardless of the priority of other WAN connections.</p> <p>If <b>Backup</b> is chosen, the WAN connection will depend on other WAN connections. It will not be used when one or more higher priority dependent WAN connections are connected.</p>
<b>Standby State</b>	This option allows you to choose whether to remain the connection connected or disconnect it when this WAN connection is no longer in the highest priority and has entered the standby state.
<b>Idle Disconnect</b>	If this is checked, the connection will disconnect when idle after the configured Time value. This option is disabled by default.

### Reply to ICMP Ping

If the checkbox is **unticked**, this option is disabled and the system will not reply to any ICMP ping echo requests to the WAN IP addresses of this WAN connection.

Default: **ticked** (Yes)

By default, the USB port is “USB Modem” mode. If you need to use it to connect to USB Ethernet Adapter, you need to change it to “USB Ethernet” mode, by enabling the hidden feature . Once this feature is enabled, the interface will behave as normal Ethernet WAN. The options that are the same as the ethernet WAN connection configuration are shown in the Ethernet WAN section.

Modem Settings	
Operator Settings	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Auto <input type="radio"/> Custom
APN	<input type="text"/>
Username	<input type="text"/>
Password	<input type="text"/>
Confirm Password	<input type="text"/>
Dial Number	<input type="text"/>
SIM PIN (Optional)	<input type="text"/> (Confirm)

### ModemSettings

#### Operator Settings

This setting allows you to configure the APN settings of your connection. If **Auto** is selected, the mobile operator should be detected automatically. The connected device will be configured and connection will be made automatically. If there is any difficulty in making connections, you may select **Custom** to enter your carrier’s **APN, Login, Password, and Dial Number** settings manually. The correct values can be obtained from your carrier. The default and recommended setting is **Auto**.

#### APN / Login / Password / SIM PIN

When **Auto** is selected, the information in these fields will be filled automatically. Select **Custom** to customize these parameters. The parameter values are determined by and can be obtained from the ISP.

## WAN Connection Settings (Common)

The remaining WAN-related settings are common to both Ethernet and cellular WAN

Physical Interface Settings	
Port Speed	<input type="text" value="Auto"/>
MTU	<input type="radio"/> Auto <input checked="" type="radio"/> Custom <input type="text" value="1440"/>
MSS	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Auto <input type="radio"/> Custom
MAC Address Clone	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Default <input type="radio"/> Custom <input type="text" value="10:56:CA:15:92:5D"/>
VLAN	<input type="checkbox"/>

Physical Interface Settings	
<b>Speed</b>	<p>This is the port speed of the WAN connection. It should be set to the same speed as the connected device in case of any port negotiation problems.</p> <p>When a static speed is set, you may choose whether to advertise its speed to the peer device or not. Advertise Speed is selected by default. You can choose not to advertise the port speed if the port has difficulty in negotiating with the peer device.</p> <p>Default: Auto</p>
<b>MTU</b>	<p>This field is for specifying the Maximum Transmission Unit value of the WAN connection. An excessive MTU value can cause file downloads stall shortly after connected. You may consult your ISP for the connection's MTU value. Default value is 1440.</p>
<b>MSS</b>	<p>This field is for specifying the Maximum Segment Size of the WAN connection.</p> <p>When Auto is selected, MSS will be depended on the MTU value. When Custom is selected, you may enter a value for MSS. This value will be announced to remote TCP servers for maximum data that it can receive during the establishment of TCP connections.</p> <p>Some Internet servers are unable to listen to MTU setting if ICMP is filtered by firewall between the connections.</p> <p>Normally, MSS equals to MTU minus 40. You are recommended to reduce the MSS only if changing of the MTU value cannot effectively inform some remote servers to size down data size.</p> <p>Default: Auto</p>
<b>MAC Address Clone</b>	<p>Some service providers (e.g. cable network) identify the client's MAC address and require client to always use the same MAC address to connect to the network. If it is the case, you may change the WAN interface's MAC address to the client PC's one by entering the PC's MAC address to this field. If you are not sure, click the Default button to restore to the default value.</p>
<b>VLAN</b>	<p>Check the box to assign a VLAN to the interface.</p>



DHCP Settings	
Hostname (Optional)	<input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Use custom hostname
DNS Servers	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Obtain DNS server address automatically <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use the following DNS server address(es) DNS Server 1: <input type="text" value="1.1.1.1"/> DNS Server 2: <input type="text" value="8.8.8.8"/>

DHCP Settings	
<b>Hostname (Optional)</b>	<p>If your service provider's DHCP server requires you to supply a hostname value upon acquiring an IP address, you may enter the value here. If your service provider does not provide you with a hostname, you can safely bypass this option.</p>
<b>DNS Servers</b>	<p>Each ISP may provide a set of DNS servers for DNS lookups. This setting specifies the DNS (Domain Name System) servers to be used when a DNS lookup is routed through this connection.</p> <p>Selecting <b>Obtain DNS server address automatically</b> results in the DNS servers assigned by the WAN DHCP server being used for outbound DNS lookups over the connection. (The DNS servers are obtained along with the WAN IP address assigned by the DHCP server.) When <b>Use the following DNS server address(es)</b> is selected, you may enter custom DNS server addresses for this WAN connection into the <b>DNS server 1</b> and <b>DNS server 2</b> fields.</p>

## Health Check Settings

To ensure traffic is routed to healthy WAN connections only, the Peplink Balance can periodically check the health of each WAN connection.

Health Check settings for each WAN connection can be independently configured via **Network>Interfaces>WAN>\*Connection name\*>Health Check Settings**.

Enable Health Check by selecting PING, DNS Lookup, or HTTP from the Health Check Method drop-down menu.

**Health Check Settings**

**Method**

This setting specifies the health check method for the WAN connection. This value can be configured as **Disabled**, **PING**, **DNS Lookup**, or **HTTP**. The default method is **DNS Lookup**. For mobile Internet connections, the value of **Method** can be configured as **Disabled** or **SmartCheck**.

**Health Check Disabled**

**Health Check Settings**

Health Check Method	<span style="color: blue; font-size: small;">?</span> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">Disabled ▾</div>
Health Check disabled. Network problem cannot be detected.	

When **Disabled** is chosen in the **Method** field, the WAN connection will always be considered as up. The connection will **NOT** be treated as down in the event of IP routing errors.

**Health Check Method: PING**

Health Check Method	<span style="color: blue; font-size: small;">?</span> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">PING ▾</div>
PING Hosts	<span style="color: blue; font-size: small;">?</span> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">Host 1: <input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/></div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">Host 2: <input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/></div> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use first two DNS servers as PING Hosts

**PING Hosts**

This setting specifies IP addresses or hostnames with which connectivity is to be tested via ICMP ping. If **Use first two DNS servers as Ping Hosts** is checked, the target ping host will be the first DNS server for the corresponding WAN connection. Reliable ping hosts with a high uptime should be considered. By default, the first two DNS servers of the WAN connection are used as the ping hosts.

**Health Check Method: DNS Lookup**

Health Check Method	<input type="text" value="DNS Lookup"/>
Health Check DNS Servers	Host 1: <input type="text"/> Host 2: <input type="text"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use first two DNS servers as Health Check DNS Servers <input type="checkbox"/> Include public DNS servers

DNS lookups will be issued to test connectivity with target DNS servers. The connection will be treated as up if DNS responses are received from one or both of the servers, regardless of whether the result was positive or negative.

### Health Check DNS Servers

This field allows you to specify two DNS hosts' IP addresses with which connectivity is to be tested via DNS Lookup.

If **Use first two DNS servers as Health Check DNS Servers** is checked, the first two DNS servers will be the DNS lookup targets for checking a connection's health. If the box is not checked, **Host 1** must be filled, while a value for **Host 2** is optional.

If **Include public DNS servers** is selected and no response is received from all specified DNS servers, DNS lookups will also be issued to some public DNS servers. A WAN connection will be treated as down only if there is also no response received from the public DNS servers.

Connections will be considered as up if DNS responses are received from any one of the health check DNS servers, regardless of a positive or negative result. By default, the first two DNS servers of the WAN connection are used as the health check DNS servers.

### Health Check Method: HTTP

Health Check Method	<input type="text" value="HTTP"/>
URL 1	<input type="text" value="http://"/> Matching String: <input type="checkbox"/>
URL 2	<input type="text" value="http://"/> Matching String: <input type="checkbox"/>

HTTP connections will be issued to test connectivity with configurable URLs and strings to match.

### URL1

#### WAN Settings>WAN Edit>Health Check Settings>URL1

The URL will be retrieved when performing an HTTP health check. When **String to Match** is left blank, a health check will pass if the HTTP return code is between 200 and 299 (Note: HTTP redirection codes 301 or 302 are treated as failures). When **String to Match** is filled, a health check will pass if the HTTP return code is between 200 and 299 and if the HTTP response content contains the string.

### URL 2

#### WAN Settings>WAN Edit>Health Check Settings>URL2

If **URL2** is also provided, a health check will pass if either one of the tests passed.

### Other Health Check Settings

Timeout	?	5 ▾ second(s)
Health Check Interval	?	5 ▾ second(s)
Health Check Retries	?	3 ▾
Recovery Retries	?	3 ▾

<b>Timeout</b>	This setting specifies the timeout in seconds for ping/DNS lookup requests. The default timeout is <b>5 seconds</b> .
<b>Health Check Interval</b>	This setting specifies the time interval in seconds between ping or DNS lookup requests. The default health check interval is <b>5 seconds</b> .
<b>Health Check Retries</b>	This setting specifies the number of consecutive ping/DNS lookup timeouts after which the Peplink Balance will treat the corresponding WAN connection as down. Default health retries is set to <b>3</b> . Using the default <b>Health Retries</b> setting of <b>3</b> , the corresponding WAN connection will be treated as down after three consecutive timeouts.
<b>Recovery Retries</b>	This setting specifies the number of consecutive successful ping/DNS lookup responses that must be received before the Peplink Balance treats a previously down WAN connection as up again. By default, <b>Recover Retries</b> is set to <b>3</b> . Using the default setting, a WAN connection that is treated as down will be considered as up again upon receiving three consecutive successful ping/DNS lookup responses.

### Note

If a WAN connection goes down, all of the WAN connections not set with a **Connection Type** of **Always-on** will also be brought up until any one of higher priority WAN connections is up and found to be healthy. This design could increase overall network availability.

For example, if WAN1, WAN2, and WAN3 have connection types of **Always-on**, **Backup Priority Group 1**, and **Backup Priority Group 2**, respectively, when WAN1 goes down, WAN2 and WAN3 will try to connect. If WAN3 is connected first, WAN2 will still be kept connecting. If WAN2 is connected, WAN3 will disconnect or stop connecting.

### Automatic Public DNS Server Check on DNS Test Failure

When the health check method is set to **DNS Lookup** and checks fail, the Balance will automatically perform DNS lookups on some public DNS servers. If the tests are successful, the WAN may not be down, but rather the target DNS server malfunctioned. You will see the following warning message on the main page:

**Failed to receive DNS response from the health-check DNS servers for WAN connection 3. But public DNS server lookup test via the WAN passed. So please check the DNS server settings.**

## Bandwidth Allowance Monitor Settings

Bandwidth Allowance Monitor Settings	
Bandwidth Allowance Monitor	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable
Action	Email notification is currently disabled. You can get notified when usage hits 75%/95% of monthly allowance by enabling <a href="#">Email Notification</a> . <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Disconnect when usage hits 100% of monthly allowance
Start Day	On <input type="text" value="1st"/> of each month at 00:00 midnight
Monthly Allowance	<input type="text"/> GB

Bandwidth Allowance Monitor	
<b>Action</b>	<p>If <b>Email Notification</b> is enabled, you will be notified by email when usage hits 75% and 95% of the monthly allowance.</p> <p>If <b>Disconnect when usage hits 100% of monthly allowance</b> is checked, this WAN connection will be disconnected automatically when the usage hits the monthly allowance. It will not resume connection unless this option has been turned off or the usage has been reset when a new billing cycle starts.</p>
<b>Start Day</b>	This option allows you to define which day of the month each billing cycle begins.
<b>Monthly Allowance</b>	This field is for defining the maximum bandwidth usage allowed for the WAN connection each month.

**Disclaimer**

Due to different network protocol overheads and conversions, the amount of data reported by this Peplink device is not representative of actual billable data usage as metered by your network provider. Peplink disclaims any obligation or responsibility for any events arising from the use of the numbers shown here.

## Additional Public IP Settings

Additional Public IP Address Settings	
Additional IP Address	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;">           IP Address <input type="text"/>            Subnet Mask <input type="text" value="255.255.255.255 (/32)"/> </div> <div style="text-align: center; margin-top: 5px;"> <input type="button" value="↓"/> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; height: 40px; width: 100%; margin-top: 5px;"></div> <div style="text-align: right; margin-top: 5px;"> <input type="button" value="✕"/> </div> <p style="font-size: small; margin-top: 5px;">Those settings will not be saved until the save button below has been pressed.</p>

## Additional Public IP Settings

### IP Address List

**IP Address List** represents the list of fixed Internet IP addresses assigned by the ISP in the event that more than one Internet IP address is assigned to this WAN connection. Enter the fixed Internet IP addresses and the corresponding subnet mask, and then click the **Down Arrow** button to populate IP address entries to the **IP Address List**.

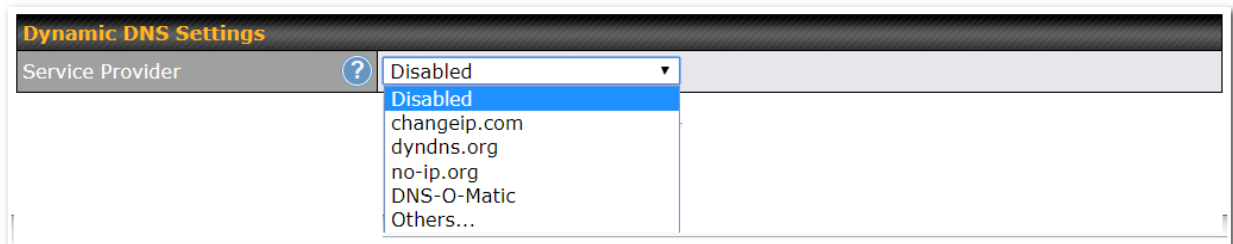
## Dynamic DNS Settings

Peplink Balance routers allow registering domain name relationships to dynamic DNS service providers. Through registration with dynamic DNS service provider(s), the default public Internet IP address of each WAN connection can be associated with a hostname. With dynamic DNS service enabled for a WAN connection, you can connect to your WAN's IP address externally even if its IP address is dynamic. You must register for an account from the listed dynamic DNS service providers before enabling this option.

If the WAN connection's IP address is a reserved private IP address (i.e., behind a NAT router), the public IP of each WAN will be automatically reported to the DNS service provider.

Either upon a change in IP addresses or every 23 days without link reconnection, the Peplink Balance will connect to the dynamic DNS service provider to update the provider's IP address records.

The settings for dynamic DNS service provider(s) and the association of hostname(s) are configured via **Network>Interfaces>WAN>\*Connection name\*>Dynamic DNS Settings**.



If your desired provider is not listed, you may check with **DNS-O-Matic**. This service supports updating 30 other dynamic DNS service providers. (Note: Peplink is not affiliated with DNS-O-Matic.)

Dynamic DNS Settings	
Service Provider	<input type="text" value="DNS-O-Matic"/>
Username	<input type="text"/>
Password	<input type="password"/>
Confirm Password	<input type="password"/>
Update All Hosts	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Dynamic DNS Settings	
<b>Service Provider</b>	<p>This setting specifies the dynamic DNS service provider to be used for the WAN. Supported providers are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• changeip.com</li> <li>• dyndns.org</li> <li>• no-ip.org</li> <li>• tzo.com</li> <li>• DNS-O-Matic</li> <li>• Others...</li> </ul> <p>support custom Dynamic DNS servers by entering its URL. Works with any service compatible with DynDNS API.</p> <p>Select <b>Disabled</b> to disable this feature.</p>
<b>User ID / User / Email</b>	This setting specifies the registered user name for the dynamic DNS service.
<b>Password / Pass / TZO Key</b>	This setting specifies the password for the dynamic DNS service.
<b>Update All Hosts</b>	Check this box to automatically update all hosts.
<b>Hosts / Domain</b>	This setting specifies a list of hostnames or domains to be associated with the public Internet IP address of the WAN connection.

### Important Note

In order to use dynamic DNS services, appropriate hostname registration(s), as well as a valid account with a supported dynamic DNS service provider, are required.

A dynamic DNS update is performed whenever a WAN's IP address is changed, such as when an IP is changed after a DHCP IP refresh or reconnection.

Due to dynamic DNS service providers' policies, a dynamic DNS host expires automatically when the host record has not been updated for a long time. Therefore, the Peplink Balance performs an update every 23 days, even if a

WAN's IP address did not change.

## 13.2 LAN

### 13.2.1 Network Settings

LAN interface settings are located at **Network>LAN>Network Settings**. Navigating to that page will show the following dashboard:

LAN	VLAN	Network	
LAN	None	172.16.251.1/24	
VLAN1	1	2.2.2.2/24	✕
VLAN2	2	3.3.3.3/24	✕

[New LAN](#)

This represents the LAN interfaces that are active on your router (including VLAN). A grey “X” means that the VLAN is used in other settings and cannot be deleted. You can find which settings are using the VLAN by hovering over the grey “X”.

Alternatively, a red “X” means that there are no settings using the VLAN. You can delete that VLAN by clicking the red “X”

Clicking on any of the existing LAN interfaces (or creating a new one) will show the following :

IP Settings	
IP Address	<input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/> (/24) ▼

IP Settings

**IP Address**      The IP address and subnet mask of the Pepwave router on the LAN.

Network Settings		?
Name	<input type="text"/>	<b>Help</b> <a href="#">Close</a> To define a layer-2 bridging based PepVPN, please click <a href="#">here</a> .
VLAN ID	<input type="text"/>	
Inter-VLAN routing	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	

Network Settings



<b>Name</b>	Enter a name for the LAN.
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Enter a number for your VLAN.
<b>Inter-VLAN routing</b>	Check this box to enable routing between virtual LANs.

**Layer 2 PepVPN Bridging** ?



PepVPN Profiles to Bridge <span style="float: right;">?</span>	No profile is available	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;"> <p><b>Help</b> <span style="float: right;">Close</span></p> <p>If you want to enable DHCP Option 82 Injection, please click <a href="#">here</a>.</p> <p>This allow the device to inject Option 82 with Router Name information before forwarding the DHCP Request packet to PepVPN peer, such that the DHCP Server can identify where does this request come from.</p> </div>
Spanning Tree Protocol	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Override IP Address when bridge connected <span style="float: right;">?</span>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Do not override <input type="radio"/> Static <input type="radio"/> By DHCP <input type="radio"/> As None	



**DHCP Server**

Layer 2 PepVPN Bridging	
<b>PepVPN Profiles to Bridge</b>	The remote network of the selected PepVPN profiles will be bridged with this local LAN, creating a Layer 2 PepVPN, they will be connected and operate like a single LAN, and any broadcast or multicast packets will be sent over the VPN.
<b>Remote Network Isolation</b>	Enable this option if you want to block network traffic between the remote networks, this will not affect the connectivity between them and this local LAN.
<b>Spanning Tree Protocol</b>	Click the box will enable STP for this layer 2 profile bridge.
<b>Override IP Address when bridge connected</b>	<p>Select "Do not override" if the LAN IP address and local DHCP server should remain unchanged after the Layer 2 PepVPN is up.</p> <p>If you choose to override IP address when the VPN is connected, the device will not act as a router, and most Layer 3 routing functions will cease to work.</p>
<b>DHCP Option 82</b>	<p>Click on the question Mark if you want to enable DHCP Option 82.</p> <p>This allows the device to inject Option 82 with Router Name information before forwarding the DHCP Request packet to a PepVPN peer, such that the DHCP Server can identify where the request originates from.</p>

DHCP Server			
DHCP Server	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Enable	
DHCP Server Logging	<input type="checkbox"/>		
IP Range	<input type="text"/>	-	<input type="text"/> 255.255.255.0 (/24) ▾
Lease Time	<input type="text"/> 1	Days	<input type="text"/> 0 Hours <input type="text"/> 0 Mins
DNS Servers	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Assign DNS server automatically	
WINS Servers	<input type="checkbox"/>	Assign WINS server	
BOOTP	<input type="checkbox"/>		
Extended DHCP Option	Option	Value	
	<i>No Extended DHCP Option</i>		
	<input type="button" value="Add"/>		
DHCP Reservation	Name	MAC Address	Static IP
		00:00:00:00:00:00	

DHCP Server Settings	
<b>DHCP Server</b>	When this setting is enabled, the DHCP server automatically assigns an IP address to each computer that is connected via LAN and configured to obtain an IP address via DHCP. The Pepwave router's DHCP server can prevent IP address collision on the LAN.
<b>DHCP Server Logging</b>	Enable logging of DHCP events in the eventlog by selecting the checkbox.
<b>IP Range &amp; Subnet Mask</b>	These settings allocate a range of IP addresses that will be assigned to LAN computers by the Pepwave router's DHCP server.
<b>Lease Time</b>	This setting specifies the length of time throughout which an IP address of a DHCP client remains valid. Upon expiration of the lease time, the assigned IP address will no longer be valid and renewal of the IP address assignment will be required.
<b>DNS Servers</b>	This option allows you to input the DNS server addresses to be offered to DHCP clients. If <b>Assign DNS server automatically</b> is selected, the Pepwave router's built-in DNS server address (i.e., LAN IP address) will be offered.
<b>WINS Servers</b>	This option allows you to optionally specify a Windows Internet Name Service (WINS) server. You may choose to use the <b>built-in WINS server</b> or <b>external WINS servers</b> . When this unit is connected using SpeedFusion™, other VPN peers can share this unit's built-in WINS server by entering this unit's LAN IP address in their DHCP <b>WINS Server</b> setting. Afterward, all PC clients in the VPN can resolve the NetBIOS names of other clients in remote peers. If you have enabled this option, a list of WINS clients will be displayed at <b>Status&gt;WINS Clients</b> .
<b>BOOTP</b>	Check this box to enable BOOTP on older networks that still require it.
<b>Extended DHCP Option</b>	In addition to standard DHCP options (e.g., DNS server address, gateway address, subnet mask), you can specify the value of additional extended DHCP options, as defined in RFC 2132. With these extended options enabled, you can pass additional configuration

	<p>information to LAN hosts.</p> <p>To define an extended DHCP option, click the <b>Add</b> button, choose the option to define and enter its value. For values that are in IP address list format, you can enter one IP address per line in the provided text area input control. Each option can be defined once only.</p>
<p><b>DHCP Reservation</b></p>	<p>This setting reserves the assignment of fixed IP addresses for a list of computers on the LAN. The computers to be assigned fixed IP addresses on the LAN are identified by their MAC addresses. The fixed IP address assignment is displayed as a cross-reference list between the computers' names, MAC addresses, and fixed IP addresses.</p> <p><b>Name</b> (an optional field) allows you to specify a name to represent the device. MAC addresses should be in the format of <b>00:AA:BB:CC:DD:EE</b>. Press  to create a new record. Press  to remove a record. Reserved client information can be imported from the <b>Client List</b>, located at <b>Status&gt;Client List</b>. For more details, please refer to <b>Section 22.3</b>.</p>

DHCP Relay Settings	
DHCP Relay	 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable
DHCP Server IP Address	DHCP Server 1: <input type="text"/> DHCP Server 2: <input type="text"/>
DHCP Option 82	 <input type="checkbox"/>
DHCP Relay Logging	<input type="checkbox"/>

DHCP Relay Settings	
<b>DHCP Relay</b>	Enter the address of the DHCP server here. DHCP requests will be relayed to it.
<b>DHCP Server IP Address</b>	DHCP requests from the LAN are relayed to the entered DHCP server. For active-passive DHCP server configurations, enter active and passive DHCP server IPs into the <b>DHCP Server 1</b> and <b>DHCP Server 2</b> fields.
<b>DHCP Option 82</b>	This feature includes device information as relay agent for the attached client when forwarding DHCP requests from a DHCP client to a DHCP server. Device MAC address and network name are embedded to circuit ID and Remote ID in option 82.
<b>DHCP Relay Logging</b>	Check this box to log DHCP relay activity.

### 13.2.2 Network Settings (Common Settings)

Static Route Settings			
Static Route	Destination Network	Subnet Mask	Gateway
	192.168.113.0	255.255.255.0 (/24) ▼	192.168.112.10
		255.255.255.0 (/24) ▼	

#### Static Route Settings

**Static Route**

This table is for defining static routing rules for the LAN segment. A static route consists of the network address, subnet mask, and gateway address. The address and subnet mask values are in *w.x.y.z* format.

The local LAN subnet and subnets behind the LAN will be advertised to the VPN. Remote routes sent over the VPN will also be accepted. Any VPN member will be able to route to the local subnet. Click to create a new route. Click to remove a route.

Entries in this list will allow traffic to route to a different subnet that is connected to the LAN interface. Any traffic destined for a network/mask pair will be directed to the corresponding gateway instead of routed through WANs.

Virtual Network Mapping			
One-to-One NAT	Local Network	Virtual Network	
Many-to-One NAT	Local Network	Virtual IP Address	

In case of a network address conflict with remote peers (i.e. PepVPN / IPsec VPN / IP Forwarding WAN are considered as remote connections), you can define Virtual Network Mapping to resolve it.

Note: OSPF & RIPv2 settings should be updated as well to avoid advertising conflicted networks.

For further details on virtual network mapping watch this video: <https://youtu.be/C1FMdZCn3Z8>

#### Virtual Network Mapping

**One-to-One NAT**

Every IP Address in the Local Network has a corresponding unique Virtual IP Address for NAT. Traffic originating from the Local Network to remote connections will be SNAT'ed and behave like coming from the defined Virtual Network. While traffic initiated by remote peers to the Virtual Network will be DNAT'ed accordingly.

**Many-to-One NAT**

The subnet range defined in Local Network will be mapped to a single Virtual IP Address for NAT. Traffic can only be initiated from local to remote, and these traffic will be NAT'ed and behaves like coming from the same Virtual IP Address.

WINS Server Settings	
Enable	<input type="checkbox"/>

### WINS Server Settings




**Enable**      Check the box to enable the WINS Server. A list of WINS clients will be displayed at **Status>WINS Clients**.

Enter any needed DNS proxy settings. Once all settings have been entered, click **Save** to store your changes.

DNS Proxy Settings																			
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>																		
DNS Caching	<input type="checkbox"/>																		
Include Google Public DNS Servers	<input type="checkbox"/>																		
Local DNS Records	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Host Name</th> <th>IP Address</th> <th></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td style="text-align: center;">+</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Host Name	IP Address				+												
Host Name	IP Address																		
		+																	
Domain Lookup Policy	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Domain</th> <th>Connection</th> <th></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td style="text-align: center;">+</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Domain	Connection				+												
Domain	Connection																		
		+																	
DNS Resolvers	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>WAN Connection</th> <th>DNS Servers</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 1</td> <td>1.1.1.1 1.0.0.1</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4</td> <td>8.8.8.8 8.8.4.4</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 5</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Mobile Internet</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <th>LAN Connection</th> <th>DNS Servers</th> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Untagged LAN</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Preferred connections are shown with <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p>	WAN Connection	DNS Servers	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 1	1.1.1.1 1.0.0.1	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2		<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3		<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4	8.8.8.8 8.8.4.4	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 5		<input type="checkbox"/> Mobile Internet		LAN Connection	DNS Servers	<input type="checkbox"/> Untagged LAN	
WAN Connection	DNS Servers																		
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 1	1.1.1.1 1.0.0.1																		
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2																			
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3																			
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4	8.8.8.8 8.8.4.4																		
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 5																			
<input type="checkbox"/> Mobile Internet																			
LAN Connection	DNS Servers																		
<input type="checkbox"/> Untagged LAN																			

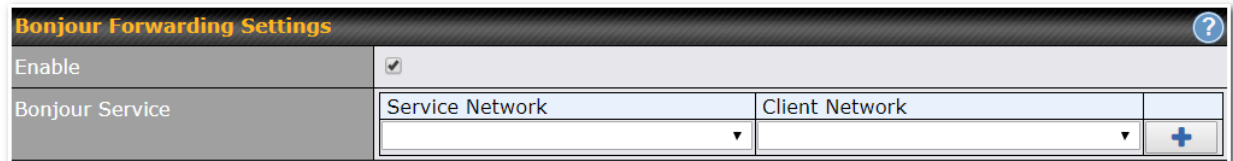
### DNS Proxy Settings

**Enable**      To enable the DNS proxy feature, check this box, and then set up the feature at

	<p><b>Network&gt;LAN&gt;DNS Proxy Settings.</b></p> <p>A DNS proxy server can be enabled to serve DNS requests originating from LAN/PPTP/SpeedFusion™ peers. Requests are forwarded to the <b>DNS servers/resolvers</b> defined for each WAN connection.</p>
<b>DNS Caching</b>	<p>This field is to enable DNS caching on the built-in DNS proxy server. When the option is enabled, queried DNS replies will be cached until the records' TTL has been reached. This feature can improve DNS response time by storing all received DNS results for faster DNS lookup. However, it cannot return the most updated result for frequently updated DNS records. By default, <b>DNS Caching</b> is disabled.</p>
<b>Include Google Public DNS Servers</b>	<p>When this option is enabled, the DNS proxy server will forward DNS requests to Google's public DNS servers, in addition to the DNS servers defined in each WAN. This could increase the DNS service's availability. This setting is disabled by default.</p>
<b>Local DNS Records</b>	<p>This table is for defining custom local DNS records. A static local DNS record consists of a host name and IP address. When looking up the host name from the LAN to LAN IP of the Peplink Balance, the corresponding IP address will be returned. To display the option to set TTL manually, click . Click  to create a new record. Click  to remove a record.</p>
<b>Domain Lookup Policy</b>	<p>DNS proxy will look up the domain names defined here using only the specified connections.</p>
<b>DNS Resolvers<sup>A</sup></b>	<p>Check the box to enable the WINS server. A list of WINS clients will be displayed at <b>Network&gt;LAN&gt;DNS Proxy Settings&gt;DNS Resolvers</b>.</p> <p>This field specifies which DNS resolvers will receive forwarded DNS requests. If no WAN/VPN/LAN DNS resolver is selected, all of the WAN's DNS resolvers will be selected. If a SpeedFusion™ peer is selected, you may enter the VPN peer's DNS resolver IP address(es).</p> <p>Queries will be forwarded to the selected connections' resolvers. If all of the selected connections are down, queries will be forwarded to all resolvers on healthy WAN connections.</p>



<sup>A</sup> - Advanced feature, please click the  button on the top right-hand corner to activate.

Finally, if needed, configure your Bonjour forwarding settings. Once all settings have been entered, click **Save** to store your changes.



Bonjour Forwarding Settings	
<b>Enable</b>	Check this box to turn on Bonjour forwarding.

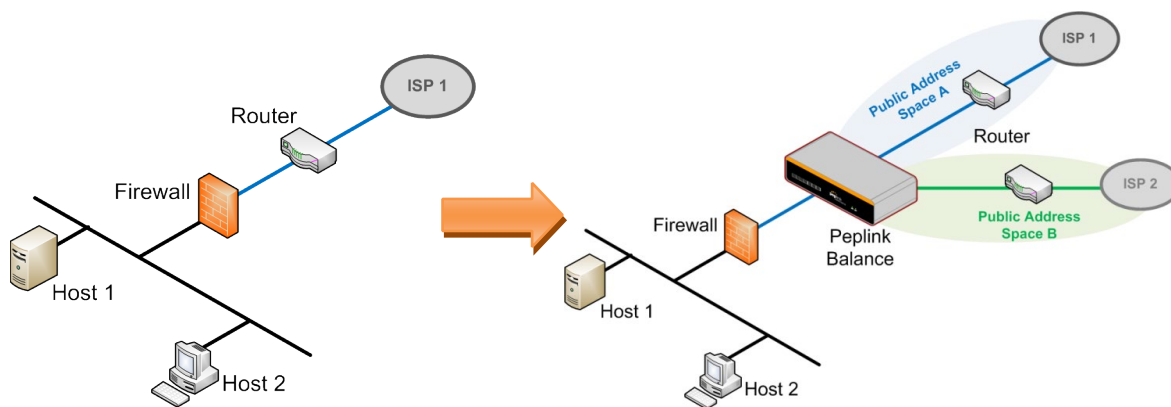
### Bonjour Service

Choose **Service** and **Client** networks from the drop-down menus, and then click  to add the networks. To delete an existing Bonjour listing, click . Bonjour Forwarding is supported on All Balance models, MAX 700, HD2, HD4

## Drop-In Mode

Drop-in mode (or transparent bridging mode) eases the installation of the Peplink Balance on a live network between the firewall and router, such that changes to the settings of existing equipment are not required.

The following diagram illustrates drop-in mode setup:



Enable drop-in mode using the Setup Wizard. After enabling this feature and selecting the WAN for drop-in mode, various settings, including the WAN's connection method and IP address, will be automatically updated.

When drop-in mode is enabled, the LAN and the WAN for drop-in mode ports will be bridged. Traffic between the LAN hosts and WAN router will be forwarded between the devices. In this case, the hosts on both sides will not notice any IP or MAC address changes.


After successfully setting up the Peplink Balance as part of the network using drop-in mode, it will, depending on model, support one or more WAN connections. Some MediaFast units also support multiple WAN connections after activating drop-in mode, though a SpeedFusion license may be required to activate more than one WAN port.

**Please note the Drop-In Mode is mutually exclusive with VLAN.**

Drop-In Mode Settings	
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
WAN for Drop-In Mode	WAN 1 ▾
Share Drop-In IP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Shared IP Address	<input type="text"/> 255.255.255.0 (/24) ▾
WAN Default Gateway	<input type="text"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> I have other host(s) on WAN segment Host IP Address(es) <input type="text"/> - <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="↓"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>
WAN DNS Servers	DNS server 1: <input type="text"/> DNS server 2: <input type="text"/>
<p>NOTE: The DHCP Server Settings will be overwritten.</p> <p>The following WAN 1 settings will be overwritten: Connection Method, MTU, Health Check, Additional Public IP, and Dynamic DNS Settings.</p> <p>The PPTP Server will be disabled.</p> <p>Tip: please review the DNS Forwarding setting under the Service Forwarding section.</p>	

Drop-in Mode Settings	
<b>Enable</b>	<p>Drop-in mode eases the installation of the Peplink Balance on a live network between the existing firewall and router, such that no configuration changes are required on existing equipment. Check the box to enable the drop-in mode feature.</p> <p>Please refer to <b>Section 12, Drop-in Mode</b> for details.</p>
<b>WAN for Drop-In Mode</b>	<p>Select the WAN port to be used for drop-in mode. If <b>WAN 1 with LAN Bypass</b> is selected, the high availability feature will be disabled automatically.</p>
<b>Shared Drop-In IP<sup>A</sup></b>	<p>When this option is enabled, the passthrough IP address will be used to connect to WAN hosts (email notification, remote syslog, etc.). The Balance will listen for this IP address when WAN hosts access services provided by the Balance (web admin access from the WAN, DNS server requests, etc.).</p> <p>To connect to hosts on the LAN (email notification, remote syslog, etc.), the default gateway address will be used. The Balance will listen for this IP address when LAN hosts access services provided by the Balance (web admin access from the WAN, DNS proxy, etc.).</p>
<b>Shared IP Address<sup>A</sup></b>	<p>Access to this IP address will be passed through to the LAN port if this device is not serving the service being accessed. The shared IP address will be used in connecting to hosts on the WAN (e.g., email notification, remote syslog, etc.) The device will also listen on the IP address when hosts on the WAN access services served on this device (e.g., web admin</p>




	accesses from WAN, DNS server, etc.)
<b>WAN Default Gateway</b>	Enter the WAN router's IP address in this field. If there are more hosts in addition to the router on the WAN segment, click the  button next to "WAN Default Gateway" and check the <b>I have other host(s) on WAN segment</b> box and enter the IP address of the hosts that need to access LAN devices or be accessed by others.
<b>WAN DNS Servers</b>	Enter the selected WAN's corresponding DNS server IP addresses.

<sup>A</sup> - Advanced feature, please click the  button on the top right-hand corner to activate.

### 13.2.3 Port Settings

To configure port settings, navigate to **Network > Port Settings**

Port Settings						
	Name	Enable	Speed	Advertise Speed	Port Type	VLAN
1	LAN Port 1 	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>			Trunk ▼	Any ▼
2	LAN Port 2	<input type="checkbox"/>	Auto ▼	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Trunk ▼	Any ▼
3	LAN Port 3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>			Trunk ▼	Any ▼

This section allows you to:

- Enable or disable specific LAN ports
- Configure the negotiation speed of the LAN ports
- Configure the port type (Trunk or Access)
- Assign a VLAN to a LAN port (in Access mode)

## 13.3 VPN

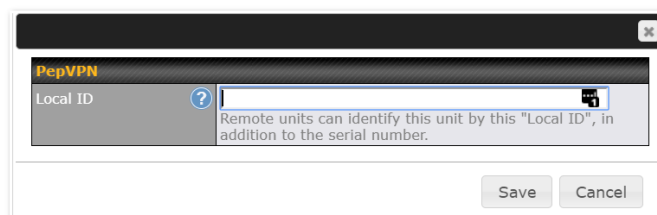
### 13.3.1 SpeedFusion



Peplink Balance SpeedFusion™ Bandwidth Bonding is our patented technology that enables our SD-WAN routers to bond multiple Internet connections to increase site-to-site bandwidth and reliability. SpeedFusion securely connects one or more branch offices to your company's main headquarters or to other branches. The data, voice, and video communications between these locations are kept confidential across the public Internet.

The SpeedFusion™ of the Peplink Balance is specifically designed for multi-WAN environments. With SpeedFusion, in case of failures and network congestion at one or more WANs, other WANs can be used to continue carrying the network traffic. Peplink Balance routers can bond all WAN connections' bandwidth for routing SpeedFusion™ traffic. Unless all the WAN connections of one site are down, the Peplink Balance can keep the VPN up and running. Bandwidth bonding is enabled by default.

To begin, navigate to **Network > VPN > SpeedFusion** and enter a Local ID and click save.



This device will be identified by other SpeedFusion Peers by this local ID. The following menu will appear:

Profile	Remote ID	Remote Address(es)	
No VPN Connection Defined			
<input type="button" value="New Profile"/>			

## SpeedFusion Profiles

This table displays all defined profiles. Click the **New Profile** button to create a new profile for making a VPN connection to a remote unit via available WAN connections. Each pair of VPN connection requires its own profile.

The local LAN subnet and subnets behind the LAN (defined under Static Route on the LAN Settings page) will be advertised to the VPN. All VPN members will be able to route to local subnets.

Send All Traffic To	
No PepVPN profile selected	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>

## Send All Traffic To

This feature allows you to redirect all traffic to a specified PepVPN connection. Click the  button to select your connection and the following menu will appear:

Send All Traffic To	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Balance 2929-2929-2929
	DNS Server
	8.8.8.8
	8.8.4.4
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Backup Site Balance-4848-4848-4848
	DNS Server
	8.8.8.8
	8.8.4.4

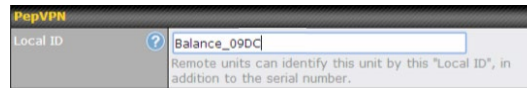
You could also specify a DNS server to resolve incoming DNS requests. Click the checkbox next to **Backup Site** to designate a backup SpeedFusion profile that will take over should the main PepVPN connection fail.

PepVPN Local ID		
Local ID	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>	Balance_01AA

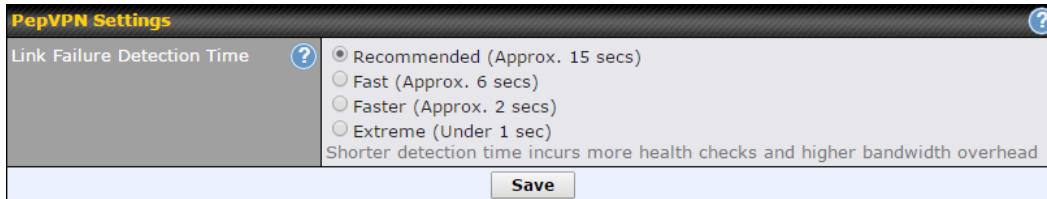
## PepVPN Local ID

This feature allows you to change the local ID of a PepVPN connection. Click the  button to select your

connection and the following menu will appear:



After updating the local ID, click **Save** to store your changes.



## Link Failure Detection

The bonded VPN can detect routing failures on the path between two sites over each WAN connection. Failed WAN connections will not be used to route VPN traffic. Health check packets are sent to the remote unit to detect any failure. The more frequently checks are sent, the shorter the detection time, although more bandwidth will be consumed.

When **Recommended** (default) is selected, a health check packet is sent every five seconds, and the expected detection time is 15 seconds.

### Link Failure Detection Time

When **Fast** is selected, a health check packet is sent every three seconds, and the expected detection time is six seconds.

When **Faster** is selected, a health check packet is sent every second, and the expected detection time is two seconds.

When **Extreme** is selected, a health check packet is sent every 0.1 second, and the expected detection time is less than one second.

## Important Note



Peplink proprietary SpeedFusion™ uses TCP port 32015 and UDP port 4500 for establishing VPN connections. If you have a firewall in front of your Peplink Balance devices, you will need to add firewall rules for these ports and protocols to allow inbound and outbound traffic to pass through the firewall.



## SpeedFusion: Profile Configuration

Click the **New Profile** button, or click one of the existing profiles, and the following menu will appear:

PepVPN Profile					
Name	<input type="text" value="Balance 2929-2929-2929"/>				
Active	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>				
SpeedFusion	Supported				
Encryption	<input checked="" type="radio"/> 256-bit AES <input type="radio"/> OFF				
Authentication	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Remote ID / Pre-shared Key <input type="radio"/> X.509				
Remote ID / Pre-shared Key	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Remote ID</th> <th>Pre-shared Key</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Balance 9898-9898-9898</td> <td>.....</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Remote ID	Pre-shared Key	Balance 9898-9898-9898	.....
Remote ID	Pre-shared Key				
Balance 9898-9898-9898	.....				
NAT Mode	<input type="checkbox"/> Untagged LAN ▼				
Remote IP Address / Host Names (Optional)	<input type="text"/> <p><small>If this field is empty, this field on the remote unit must be filled</small></p>				
Data Port	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Default <input type="radio"/> Custom <input type="text"/>				
Bandwidth Limit	<input type="checkbox"/>				
Cost	<input type="text" value="10"/>				
WAN Smoothing	<input type="text" value="Off"/>				
Use IP ToS	<input type="checkbox"/>				


A list of defined SpeedFusion connection profiles and a **Link Failure Detection Time** option will be shown. Click the **New Profile** button to create a new VPN connection profile for making a VPN connection to a remote Peplink Balance via the available WAN connections. Each profile is for making a VPN connection with one remote Peplink Balance.

PepVPN Profile Settings	
<b>Name</b>	<p>This field is for specifying a name to represent this profile. The name can be any combination of alphanumeric characters (0-9, A-Z, a-z), underscores (_), dashes (-), and/or non-leading/trailing spaces ( ).</p> <p>Click the  icon next to the <b>PepVPN Profile</b> title bar to use the IP ToS field of your data packet on PepVPN WAN traffic.</p>
<b>Active</b>	When this box is checked, this VPN connection profile will be enabled. Otherwise, it will be disabled.
<b>Encryption</b>	By default, VPN traffic is encrypted with <b>256-bit AES</b> . If <b>Off</b> is selected on both sides of a VPN connection, no encryption will be applied.
<b>Authentication</b>	Select from <b>By Remote ID Only</b> , <b>Preshared Key</b> , or <b>X.509</b> to specify the method the Peplink Balance will use to authenticate peers. When selecting <b>By Remote ID Only</b> , be sure to enter a unique peer ID number in the <b>Remote ID</b> field.
<b>Remote ID / Pre-shared Key</b>	<p>This optional field becomes available when <b>Remote ID / Pre-shared Key</b> is selected as the Peplink Balance's VPN <b>Authentication</b> method, as explained above. <b>Pre-shared Key</b> defines the pre-shared key used for this particular VPN connection. The VPN connection's session key will be further protected by the pre-shared key. The connection will be up only if the pre-shared keys on each side match. When the peer is running firmware 5.0+, this setting will be ignored.</p> <p>Enter Remote IDs either by typing out each Remote ID and Pre-shared Key, or by pasting a CSV. If you wish to paste a CSV, click the  icon next to the "Remote ID / Preshared Key" setting.</p>
<b>Remote ID/Remote Certificate</b>	These optional fields become available when <b>X.509</b> is selected as the Peplink Balance's VPN authentication method, as explained above. To authenticate VPN connections using X.509 certificates, copy and paste certificate details into these fields. To get more information on a listed X.509 certificate, click the <b>Show Details</b> link below the field.
<b>Allow Shared Remote ID</b>	When this option is enabled, the router will allow multiple peers to run using the same remote ID.
<b>NAT Mode</b>	Check this box to allow the local DHCP server to assign an IP address to the remote peer. When <b>NAT Mode</b> is enabled, all remote traffic over the VPN will be tagged with the assigned IP address using network address translation.
<b>Remote IP</b>	If <b>NAT Mode</b> is not enabled, you can enter a remote peer's WAN IP address or hostname(s) here. If the remote uses more than one address, enter only one of them here. Multiple

<b>Address / Host Names (Optional)</b>	<p>hostnames are allowed and can be separated by a space character or carriage return. Dynamic-DNS host names are also accepted.</p> <p>This field is optional. With this field filled, the Peplink Balance will initiate connection to each of the remote IP addresses until it succeeds in making a connection. If the field is empty, the Peplink Balance will wait for connection from the remote peer. Therefore, at least one of the two VPN peers must specify this value. Otherwise, VPN connections cannot be established.</p> <p>Click the  icon to customize the handshake port of the remote Host (TCP)</p>
<b>Data Port</b>	<p>This field is used to specify a UDP port number for transporting outgoing VPN data. If <b>Default</b> is selected, UDP port 4500 will be used. Port 32015 will be used if the remote unit uses Firmware prior to version 5.4 or if port 4500 is unavailable. If <b>Custom</b> is selected, enter an outgoing port number from 1 to 65535.</p> <p>Click the  icon to configure data stream using TCP protocol [EXPERIMENTAL]. In the case TCP protocol is used, the exposed TCP session option can be authorised to work with TCP accelerated WAN link.</p>
<b>Bandwidth Limit</b>	<p>Define maximum download and upload speed to each individual peer. This functionality requires the peer to use PepVPN version 4.0.0 or above.</p>
<b>Cost</b>	<p>Define path cost for this profile. OSPF will determine the best route through the network using the assigned cost. Default: 10</p>
<b>WAN Smoothing<sup>A</sup></b>	<p>While using PepVPN, utilize multiple WAN links to reduce the impact of packet loss and get the lowest possible latency at the expense of extra bandwidth consumption. This is suitable for streaming applications where the average bitrate requirement is much lower than the WAN's available bandwidth.</p> <p>Off - Disable WAN Smoothing.</p> <p>Normal - The total bandwidth consumption will be at most 2x of the original data traffic.</p> <p>Medium - The total bandwidth consumption will be at most 3x of the original data traffic.</p> <p>High - The total bandwidth consumption depends on the number of connected active tunnels.</p>

<sup>A</sup> - Advanced feature, please click the  button on the top right-hand corner to activate.


To enable Layer 2 Bridging between PepVPN profiles, navigate to **Network>LAN>\*LAN Profile Name\***

WAN Connection Priority 					
	Priority	Direction	Connect to Remote	Cut-off latency (ms)	Suspension Time after Packet Loss (ms)
1. WAN 1	1 (Highest) ▼	Up/Down ▼	All ▼	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
2. WAN 2	1 (Highest) ▼	Up/Down ▼	All ▼	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
3. Wi-Fi WAN	1 (Highest) ▼	Up/Down ▼	All ▼	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
4. Cellular 1	1 (Highest) ▼	Up/Down ▼	All ▼	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
5. Cellular 2	1 (Highest) ▼	Up/Down ▼	All ▼	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
6. USB	1 (Highest) ▼	Up/Down ▼	All ▼	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

WAN Connection Priority

### WAN Connection Priority

If your device supports it, you can specify the priority of WAN connections to be used for making VPN connections. WAN connections set to **OFF** will never be used. Only available WAN connections with the highest priority will be used.

To enable asymmetric connections, connection mapping to remote WANs, cut-off latency, and packet loss suspension time, click the  button.

Peplink also published a whitepaper about Speedfusion which can be downloaded from the following url: <http://download.peplink.com/resources/whitepaper-speedfusion-and-best-practices-2019.pdf>

### 13.3.2 IPsec VPN

Peplink Balance IPsec VPN functionality securely connects one or more branch offices to your company's main headquarters or to other branches. Data, voice, and video communications between these locations are kept safe and confidential across the public Internet.



All Peplink products can make multiple IPsec VPN connections with Peplink routers, as well as Cisco and Juniper routers.

Note that all LAN subnets and the subnets behind them must be unique. Otherwise, VPN members will not be able to access each other.

All data can be routed over the VPN with a selection of encryption standards, such as 3DES, AES-128, and AES-256.

To configure, navigate to **Network>Interfaces>IPsec VPN**.




<b>NAT-Traversal</b>		Enabled (required by L2TP with IPsec)	
<b>IPsec VPN Profiles</b>		<b>Remote Networks</b>	
Profile 1		192.168.11.193/24	
<input type="button" value="New Profile"/>			

A **NAT-Traversal** option and list of defined **IPsec VPN** profiles will be shown.

**NAT-Traversal** should be enabled if your system is behind a NAT router.

Click the **New Profile** button to create new IPsec VPN profiles that make VPN connections to remote Peplink Balance, Cisco, or Juniper Routers via available WAN connections. To edit any of the profiles, click on its associated connection name in the leftmost column.

Name	Profile 1		
Active	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
Connect Upon Disconnection of	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN 2		
Remote Gateway IP Address / Host Name	12.12.12.12		
Local Networks	<p>Propose the following networks to remote gateway:</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 172.16.1.1/24</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 172.16.2.1/24</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 172.16.3.1/24</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 10.10.0.1/32</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 192.168.10.0/24</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 192.168.11.0/24</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> <input type="text"/></p> <p>Apply the following NAT policies:</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 172.16.1.0/24      <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 192.168.10.0/24</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 172.16.2.0/24      <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 10.10.0.1/32</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 172.16.3.11/32      <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 192.168.11.101/32</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 172.16.3.21/32      <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 192.168.11.201/32</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Local Network      <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> NAT Network</p>		
Remote Networks	Network	Subnet Mask	
	192.167.11.193	255.255.255.0 (/24)	<input type="button" value="+"/>
Authentication	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Preshared Key <input type="radio"/> X.509 Certificate		
Mode	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Main Mode (All WANs need to have Static IP)		
	<input type="radio"/> Aggressive Mode		
Force UDP Encapsulation	<input type="checkbox"/>		
Preshared Key	<input type="text" value="....."/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Hide Characters		
Local ID	<input type="text"/>		
Remote ID	<input type="text"/>		
Phase 1 (IKE) Proposal	1	AES-256 & SHA1	<input type="button" value="v"/>
	2	-----	<input type="button" value="v"/>
Phase 1 DH Group	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Group 2: MODP 1024		
	<input type="checkbox"/> Group 5: MODP 1536		
Phase 1 SA Lifetime	3600	seconds	<b>Default</b>
Phase 2 (ESP) Proposal	1	AES-256 & SHA1	<input type="button" value="v"/>
	2	-----	<input type="button" value="v"/>
Phase 2 PFS Group	<input checked="" type="radio"/> None		
	<input type="radio"/> Group 2: MODP 1024		
	<input type="radio"/> Group 5: MODP 1536		
Phase 2 SA Lifetime	28800	seconds	<b>Default</b>

IPsec VPN Settings	
<b>Name</b>	This field is for specifying a local name to represent this connection profile.
<b>Active</b>	When this box is checked, this IPsec VPN connection profile will be enabled. Otherwise, it will be disabled.
<b>Connect Upon Disconnection of</b>	Check this box and select a WAN to connect to this VPN automatically when the specified WAN is disconnected. To activate this function, click the  button next to the "Active" option.
<b>Remote Gateway IP Address / Host Name</b>	Enter the remote peer's public IP address. For <b>Aggressive Mode</b> , this is optional.
<b>Local Networks</b>	<p>Enter the local LAN subnets here. If you have defined static routes, they will be shown here.</p> <p>Using NAT, you can map a specific local network / IP address to another, and the packets received by remote gateway will appear to be coming from the mapped network / IP address. This allows you to establish IPsec connection to a remote site that has one or more subnets overlapped with local site.</p> <p>Two types of NAT policies can be defined:</p> <p><b>One-to-One NAT policy:</b> if the defined subnet in Local Network and NAT Network has the same size, for example, policy "192.168.50.0/24 &gt; 172.16.1.0/24" will translate the local IP address 192.168.50.10 to 172.16.1.10 and 192.168.50.20 to 172.16.1.20. This is a bidirectional mapping which means clients in remote site can initiate connection to the local clients using the mapped address too.</p> <p><b>Many-to-One NAT policy:</b> if the defined NAT Network on the right hand side is an IP address (or having a network prefix /32), for example, policy "192.168.1.0/24 &gt; 172.168.50.1/32" will translate all clients in 192.168.1.0/24 network to 172.168.50.1. This is a unidirectional mapping which means clients in remote site will not be able to initiate a connection to the local clients.</p>
<b>Remote Networks</b>	Enter the LAN and subnets that are located at the remote site here.
<b>Authentication</b>	To access your VPN, clients will need to authenticate by your choice of methods. Choose between the <b>Preshared Key</b> and <b>X.509 Certificate</b> methods of authentication.
<b>Mode</b>	Choose <b>Main Mode</b> if both IPsec peers use static IP addresses. Choose <b>Aggressive Mode</b> if one of the IPsec peers uses dynamic IP addresses.
<b>Force UDP Encapsulation</b>	For forced UDP encapsulation regardless of NAT-traversal, tick this checkbox.

<b>Pre-shared Key</b>	This defines the peer authentication pre-shared key used to authenticate this VPN connection. The connection will be up only if the pre-shared keys on each side match.
<b>Remote Certificate (pem encoded)</b>	Available only when <b>X.509 Certificate</b> is chosen as the <b>Authentication</b> method, this field allows you to paste a valid X.509 certificate.
<b>Local ID</b>	In <b>Main Mode</b> , this field can be left blank. In <b>Aggressive Mode</b> , if <b>Remote Gateway IP Address</b> is filled on this end and the peer end, this field can be left blank. Otherwise, this field is typically a U-FQDN.
<b>Remote ID</b>	In <b>Main Mode</b> , this field can be left blank. In <b>Aggressive Mode</b> , if <b>Remote Gateway IP Address</b> is filled on this end and the peer end, this field can be left blank. Otherwise, this field is typically a U-FQDN.
<b>Phase 1 (IKE) Proposal</b>	In <b>Main Mode</b> , this allows setting up to six encryption standards, in descending order of priority, to be used in initial connection key negotiations. In <b>Aggressive Mode</b> , only one selection is permitted.
<b>Phase 1 DH Group</b>	This is the Diffie-Hellman group used within IKE. This allows two parties to establish a shared secret over an insecure communications channel. The larger the group number, the higher the security. <b>Group 2: 1024-bit</b> is the default value. <b>Group 5: 1536-bit</b> is the alternative option.
<b>Phase 1 SA Lifetime</b>	This setting specifies the lifetime limit of this Phase 1 Security Association. By default, it is set at <b>3600</b> seconds.
<b>Phase 2 (ESP) Proposal</b>	In <b>Main Mode</b> , this allows setting up to six encryption standards, in descending order of priority, to be used for the IP data that is being transferred. In <b>Aggressive Mode</b> , only one selection is permitted.
<b>Phase 2 PFS Group</b>	Perfect forward secrecy (PFS) ensures that if a key was compromised, the attacker will be able to access only the data protected by that key. <b>None</b> - Do not request for PFS when initiating connection. However, since there is no valid reason to refuse PFS, the system will allow the connection to use PFS if requested by the remote peer. This is the default value. <b>Group 2: 1024-bit</b> Diffie-Hellman group. The larger the group number, the higher the security. <b>Group 5: 1536-bit</b> is the third option.
<b>Phase 2 SA Lifetime</b>	This setting specifies the lifetime limit of this Phase 2 Security Association. By default, it is set at <b>28800</b> seconds.

IPsec VPN on the Peplink Balance is specially designed for multi-WAN environments. For instance, if a user sets up multiple IPsec profiles for his multi-WAN environment and WAN1 is connected and healthy, IPsec traffic will go through this link. However, should unforeseen problems (e.g., unplugged cables or ISP

problems) cause WAN1 to go down, our IPsec implementation will make use of WAN2 and WAN3 for failover

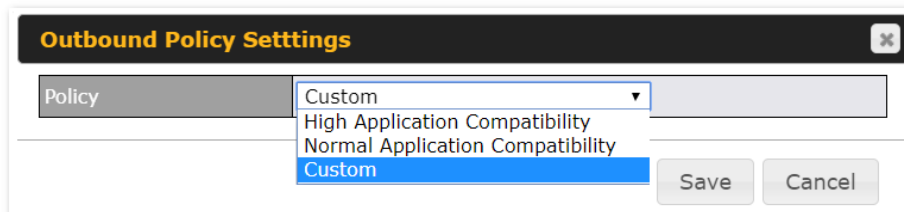
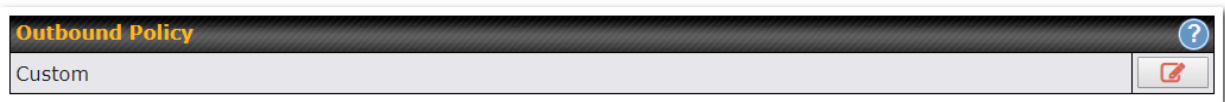
WAN Connection Priority	
Priority	WAN Selection
1	WAN
2	-----

**IPsec Status** shows the current connection status of each connection profile and is displayed at **Status>IPsec VPN**.

## 13.4 Outbound Policy

Outbound policies for managing and load balancing outbound traffic are located at

**Network>Outbound Policy**. Click the  button beside the **Outbound Policy** box:



A selection menu will appear, giving you the choice between three different Outbound Policy Settings:

Outbound Policy Settings	
<p><b>High Application Compatibility</b></p>	<p>Outbound traffic from a source LAN device is routed through the same WAN connection regardless of the destination Internet IP address and protocol. This option provides the highest application compatibility.</p>
<p><b>Normal Application Compatibility</b></p>	<p>Outbound traffic from a source LAN device to the same destination Internet IP address will be routed through the same WAN connection persistently, regardless of protocol. This option provides high compatibility to most applications, and users still benefit from WAN link load balancing when multiple Internet servers are accessed.</p>

## Custom

Outbound traffic behavior can be managed by defining rules in a custom rule table. A default rule can be defined for connections that cannot be matched with any of the rules.

The menu underneath enables you to define Outbound policy rules:

Service	Algorithm	Source	Destination	Protocol / Port	
HTTPS Persistence	Persistence (Src) (Auto)	Any	Any	TCP 443	
Default	(Auto)				

**Add Rule**

The bottom-most rule is **Default**. Edit this rule to change the device's default manner of controlling outbound traffic for all connections that do not match any of the rules above it. Under the **Service** heading, click **Default** to change these settings.

To rearrange the priority of outbound rules, drag and drop them into the desired sequence.

**Edit Default Custom Rule**

Default Rule:  Custom  Auto

Algorithm: Weighted Balance

Load Distribution Weight:

- WAN 1 10
- WAN 2 10
- WAN 3 10
- WAN 4 10
- WAN 5 10
- Mobile Internet 10

When No Connections are Available:   
 Drop the Traffic  
 Drop the Traffic  
 Use Any Available Connections

Save Cancel

By default, **Auto** is selected as the **Default Rule**. You can select **Custom** to change the algorithm to be used. Please refer to the upcoming sections for the details on the available algorithms.

To create a custom rule, click **Add Rule** at the bottom of the table.

**Add a New Custom Rule**
✕

<b>Service Name</b>	<input style="width: 90%;" type="text"/>
<b>Enable</b>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Always on ▾
<b>Source</b>	Any ▾
<b>Destination</b> <span style="font-size: 0.8em; color: #00aaff;">?</span>	IP Network ▾ <input style="width: 100px;" type="text"/> Mask: 255.255.255.0 (/24) ▾
<b>Protocol</b> <span style="font-size: 0.8em; color: #00aaff;">?</span>	Any ▾ ◀ :: Protocol Selection :: ▾
<b>Algorithm</b> <span style="font-size: 0.8em; color: #00aaff;">?</span>	Weighted Balance ▾
<b>Load Distribution Weight</b> <span style="font-size: 0.8em; color: #00aaff;">?</span>	<div style="margin-bottom: 5px;">WAN 1 10 <span style="float: right;">▬ <span style="color: #00aaff;">●</span></span></div> <div style="margin-bottom: 5px;">WAN 2 10 <span style="float: right;">▬ <span style="color: #00aaff;">●</span></span></div> <div style="margin-bottom: 5px;">WAN 3 10 <span style="float: right;">▬ <span style="color: #00aaff;">●</span></span></div> <div style="margin-bottom: 5px;">WAN 4 10 <span style="float: right;">▬ <span style="color: #00aaff;">●</span></span></div> <div style="margin-bottom: 5px;">WAN 5 10 <span style="float: right;">▬ <span style="color: #00aaff;">●</span></span></div> <div style="margin-bottom: 5px;">Mobile Internet 10 <span style="float: right;">▬ <span style="color: #00aaff;">●</span></span></div>
<b>When No Connections are Available</b> <span style="font-size: 0.8em; color: #00aaff;">?</span>	Drop the Traffic ▾

New Custom Rule Settings	
<b>Service Name</b>	This setting specifies the name of the outbound traffic rule.
<b>Enable</b>	<p>This setting specifies whether the outbound traffic rule takes effect. When <b>Enable</b> is checked, the rule takes effect: traffic is matched and actions are taken by the Pepwave router based on the other parameters of the rule. When <b>Enable</b> is unchecked, the rule does not take effect: the Pepwave router disregards the other parameters of the rule.</p> <p>Click the drop-down menu next to the checkbox to apply a time schedule to this custom rule.</p>
<b>Source</b>	This setting specifies the source IP address, IP network, or MAC address for traffic that matches the rule.
<b>Destination</b>	This setting specifies the destination IP address, IP network, or domain name for traffic that matches the rule.

Destination	Domain Name
Protocol	Any
Algorithm	IP Address
	IP Network
	Domain Name

If **Domain Name** is chosen and a domain name, such as *foobar.com*, is entered, any outgoing accesses to *foobar.com* and *\*.foobar.com* will match this criterion. You may enter a wildcard (.) at the end of a domain name to match any host with a name having the domain name in the middle. If you enter *foobar.\**, for example, *www.foobar.com*, *www.foobar.co.jp*, or *foobar.co.uk* will also match. Placing wildcards in any other position is not supported. NOTE: if a server has one Internet IP address and multiple server names, and if one of the names is defined here, access to any one of the server names will also match this rule.

**Protocol and Port** This setting specifies the IP protocol and port of traffic that matches this rule.

### Algorithm

This setting specifies the behavior of the Pepwave router for the custom rule. One of the following values can be selected (note that some Pepwave routers provide only some of these options):

- Weighted Balance
- Persistence
- Enforced
- Priority
- Overflow
- Least Used
- Lowest Latency
- Fastest Response Time

For a full explanation of each Algorithm, please see the following article:

<https://forum.peplink.com/t/exactly-how-do-peplinks-load-balancing-algorithms-work/8059>

### Load Distribution Weight

This is to define the outbound traffic weight ratio for each WAN connection.

### Terminate Sessions on Link Recovery

This setting specifies whether to terminate existing IP sessions on a less preferred WAN connection in the event that a more preferred WAN connection is recovered. This setting is applicable to the **Weighted**, **Persistence**, and **Priority** algorithms. By default, this setting is disabled. In this case, existing IP sessions will not be terminated or affected when any other WAN connection is recovered. When this setting is enabled, existing IP sessions may be terminated when another WAN connection is recovered, such that only the preferred healthy WAN connection(s) is used at any point in time.



**When No connections are available**

This field allows you to configure the default action when all the selected Connections are not available.

**Drop the Traffic** - Traffic will be discarded.

**Use Any Available Connections** - Traffic will be routed to any available Connection, even it is not selected in the list.

**Fall-through to Next Rule** - Traffic will continue to match next Outbound Policy rule just like this rule is inactive.

**Help** [Close](#)

This table allows you to fine tune how the outbound traffic should be distributed to the WAN connections.

Click the *Add Rule* button to add a new rule. Click the *X* button to remove a rule. Drag a rule to promote or demote its precedence. A higher position of a rule signifies a higher precedence. You may change the default outbound policy behavior by clicking the *Default* link.

If you require advanced control to override routes learned from PepVPN peers, OSPF or RIPv2 protocols, [turn on Expert Mode](#).

**Expert Mode** is available on some Pepwave routers for use by advanced users. To enable the feature, click on the help icon and click **turn on Expert Mode**.

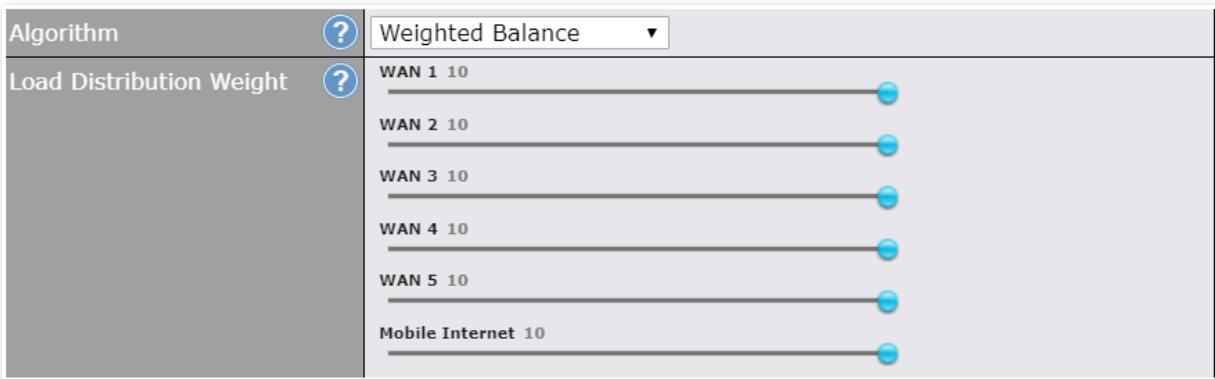
In Expert Mode, a new special rule, **SpeedFusion™ Routes**, is displayed in the **Custom Rules** table. This rule represents all SpeedFusion™ routes learned from remote VPN peers. By default, this bar is on the top of all custom rules. This position means that traffic for remote VPN subnets will be routed to the corresponding VPN peer. You can create custom **Priority** or **Enforced** rules and move them

above the bar to override the SpeedFusion™ routes.

Upon disabling Expert Mode, all rules above the bar will be removed.

**Algorithm: Weighted Balance**

This setting specifies the ratio of WAN connection usage to be applied on the specified IP protocol and port. This setting is applicable only when **Algorithm** is set to **Weighted Balance**.



The amount of matching traffic that is distributed to a WAN connection is proportional to the weight of the WAN connection relative to the total weight. Use the sliders to change each WAN's weight.

For example, with the following weight settings:

- Ethernet WAN1: 10
- Ethernet WAN2: 10
- Wi-Fi WAN: 10
- Cellular 1: 10
- Cellular 2: 10
- USB: 10

Total weight is 60 = (10 + 10 + 10 + 10 + 10 + 10).

Matching traffic distributed to Ethernet WAN1 is 16.7% = (10 / 60 x 100%.

Matching traffic distributed to Ethernet WAN2 is 16.7% = (10 / 60) x 100%.

Matching traffic distributed to Wi-Fi WAN is 16.7% = (10 / 60) x 100%.

Matching traffic distributed to Cellular 1 is 16.7% = (10 / 60) x 100%.

Matching traffic distributed to Cellular 2 is 16.7% = (10 / 60) x 100%.

Matching traffic distributed to USB is 16.7% = (10 / 60) x 100%.



### Algorithm: Persistence

The configuration of persistent services is the solution to the few situations where link load distribution for Internet services is undesirable. For example, for security reasons, many e-banking and other secure websites terminate the session when the client computer's Internet IP address changes mid-session.

In general, different Internet IP addresses represent different computers. The security concern is that an IP address change during a session may be the result of an unauthorized intrusion attempt. Therefore, to prevent damages from the potential intrusion, the session is terminated upon the detection of an IP address change.

Pepwave routers can be configured to distribute data traffic across multiple WAN connections. Also, the Internet IP depends on the WAN connections over which communication actually takes place. As a result, a LAN client computer behind the Pepwave router may communicate using multiple Internet IP addresses. For example, a LAN client computer behind a Pepwave router with three WAN connections may communicate on the Internet using three different IP addresses.

With the persistence feature, rules can be configured to enable client computers to persistently utilize the same WAN connections for e-banking and other secure websites. As a result, a client computer will communicate using one IP address, eliminating the issues mentioned above.

Algorithm		Persistence ▼
Persistence Mode		<input checked="" type="radio"/> By Source <input type="radio"/> By Destination

There are two persistent modes: **By Source** and **By Destination**.

<b>By Source:</b>	The same WAN connection will be used for traffic matching the rule and originating from the same machine, regardless of its destination. This option will provide the highest level of application compatibility.
<b>By Destination:</b>	The same WAN connection will be used for traffic matching the rule, originating from the same machine, and going to the same destination. This option can better distribute loads to WAN connections when there are only a few client machines.

The default mode is **By Source**. When there are multiple client requests, they can be distributed (persistently) to WAN connections with a weight. If you choose **Auto** in **Load Distribution**, the weights will be automatically adjusted according to each WAN's **Downstream Bandwidth** which is specified in the WAN settings page). If you choose **Custom**, you can customize the weight of each WAN manually by using the sliders.

### Algorithm: Enforced

This setting specifies the WAN connection usage to be applied on the specified IP protocol and port. This setting is applicable only when **Algorithm** is set to **Enforced**.

Algorithm	?	Enforced
Enforced Connection	?	WAN: WAN 1 WAN: WAN 1 WAN: WAN 2 WAN: WAN 3 WAN: WAN 4 WAN: WAN 5 WAN: Mobile Internet
		<input type="button" value="Save"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>

Matching traffic will be routed through the specified WAN connection, regardless of the health check status of the WAN connection. Outbound traffic can also be enforced to go through a specified SpeedFusion™ connection.

### Algorithm: Priority

This setting specifies the priority of the WAN connections used to route the specified network service. The highest priority WAN connection available will always be used for routing the specified type of traffic. A lower priority WAN connection will be used only when all higher priority connections have become unavailable.

Algorithm	?	Priority																
Priority Order	?	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Highest Priority</td> <td>Not In Use</td> </tr> <tr> <td>WAN: WAN 1</td> <td>VPN: Connection 1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>WAN: WAN 2</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>WAN: Wi-Fi WAN</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>WAN: Cellular 1</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>WAN: Cellular 2</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>WAN: USB</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Lowest Priority</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	Highest Priority	Not In Use	WAN: WAN 1	VPN: Connection 1	WAN: WAN 2		WAN: Wi-Fi WAN		WAN: Cellular 1		WAN: Cellular 2		WAN: USB		Lowest Priority	
Highest Priority	Not In Use																	
WAN: WAN 1	VPN: Connection 1																	
WAN: WAN 2																		
WAN: Wi-Fi WAN																		
WAN: Cellular 1																		
WAN: Cellular 2																		
WAN: USB																		
Lowest Priority																		
Terminate Sessions on Link Recovery	?	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable																

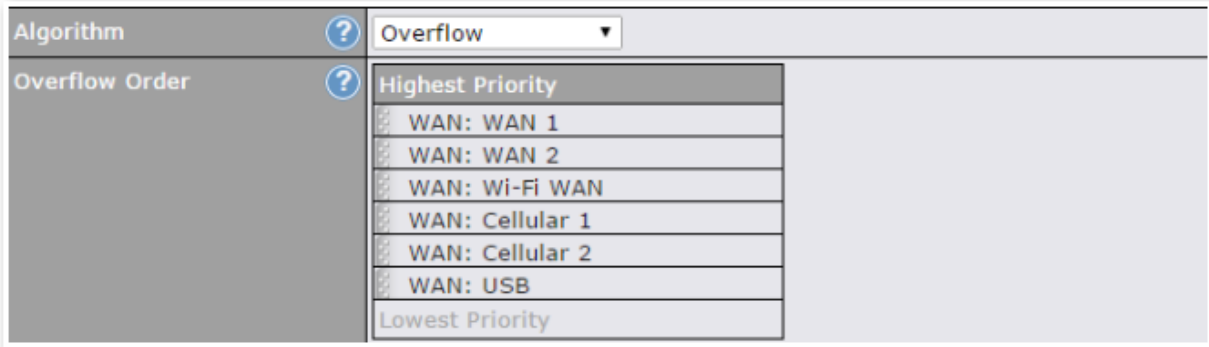
Starting from Firmware 5.2, outbound traffic can be prioritized to go through SpeedFusion™ connection(s). By default, VPN connections are not included in the priority list.

<b>Tip</b>
Configure multiple distribution rules to accommodate different kinds of services.

### Algorithm: Overflow

The traffic matching this rule will be routed through the healthy WAN connection that has the highest priority

and is not in full load. When this connection gets saturated, new sessions will be routed to the next healthy WAN connection that is not in full load.



Drag and drop to specify the order of WAN connections to be used for routing traffic. Only the highest priority healthy connection that is not in full load will be used.

### Algorithm: Least Used

**Add a New Custom Rule**
✕

Service Name	<input type="text"/>
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Always on ▾
Source	Any ▾
Destination	<span style="color: #007bff; font-size: 1.2em;">?</span> IP Network ▾ <input type="text"/> Mask: 255.255.255.0 (/24) ▾
Protocol	<span style="color: #007bff; font-size: 1.2em;">?</span> Any ▾ ← :: Protocol Selection :: ▾
Algorithm	<span style="color: #007bff; font-size: 1.2em;">?</span> Least Used ▾
Connection	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN 2 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN 3 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 5
When No Connections are Available	<span style="color: #007bff; font-size: 1.2em;">?</span> Drop the Traffic ▾

The traffic matching this rule will be routed through the healthy WAN connection that is selected in **Connection** and has the most available download bandwidth. The available download bandwidth of a WAN connection is calculated from the total download bandwidth specified on the WAN settings page and the current download usage. The available bandwidth and WAN selection is determined every time an IP session is made.

### Algorithm: Lowest Latency

**Add a New Custom Rule** ✕

Service Name	<input type="text"/>
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Always on ▾
Source	Any ▾
Destination	<span style="color: blue;">?</span> IP Network ▾ <input type="text"/> Mask: 255.255.255.0 (/24) ▾
Protocol	<span style="color: blue;">?</span> Any ▾ ← :: Protocol Selection :: ▾
Algorithm	<span style="color: blue;">?</span> Lowest Latency ▾ <small>Note: Use of Lowest Latency will incur additional network usage.</small>
Connection	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN 2 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN 3 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 5 <input type="checkbox"/> Mobile Internet
When No Connections are Available	<span style="color: blue;">?</span> Drop the Traffic ▾

The traffic matching this rule will be routed through the healthy WAN connection that is selected in **Connection** and has the lowest latency. Latency checking packets are issued periodically to a nearby router of each WAN connection to determine its latency value. The latency of a WAN is the packet round trip time of the WAN connection. Additional network usage may be incurred as a result.

#### Tip

The roundtrip time of a 6M down/640k uplink can be higher than that of a 2M down/2M up link because the overall round trip time is lengthened by its slower upload bandwidth, despite its higher downlink speed. Therefore, this algorithm is good for two scenarios:

- All WAN connections are symmetric; or
- A latency sensitive application must be routed through the lowest latency WAN, regardless of the WAN's available bandwidth.

## Algorithm : Fastest Response Time

**Add a New Custom Rule**
✕

Service Name	<input type="text"/>
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Always on ▾
Source	Any ▾
Destination	<input type="text" value="IP Network"/> ▾ <input type="text" value="Mask: 255.255.255.0 (/24)"/> ▾
Protocol	<input type="text" value="Any"/> ▾           ← :: Protocol Selection :: ▾
Algorithm	Fastest Response Time ▾
Connection	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN 2 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 5 <input type="checkbox"/> Mobile Internet
When No Connections are Available	<input type="text" value="Drop the Traffic"/> ▾

The Fastest response Time algorithm works as follows: When a network session is created, the first outgoing packet of that particular session is duplicated to all the available WANs.

When the first response is received from a remote server, any further traffic for this session will be routed over that particular WAN connection for the fastest possible response time.

If any slower responses are received on other connections afterwards, they will be discarded.

## 13.5 Inbound Access

Inbound access is also known as inbound port address translation. On a NAT WAN connection, all inbound traffic to the server behind the Peplink unit requires inbound access rules.

By the custom definition of servers and services for inbound access, Internet users can access the servers behind Peplink Balance. Advanced configurations allow inbound access to be distributed among multiple servers on the LAN.

### Important Note

Inbound access applies only to WAN connections that operate in NAT mode. For WAN connections that operate in

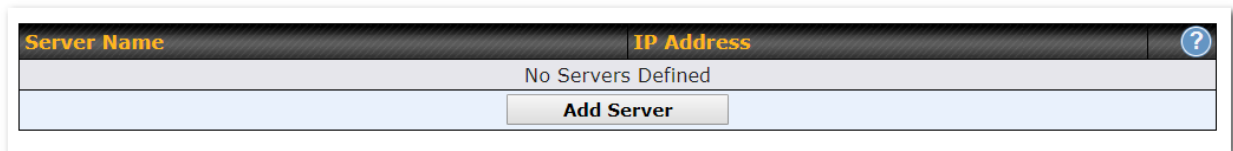


drop-in mode or IP forwarding, inbound traffic is forwarded to the LAN by default.

### 13.5.1 Servers

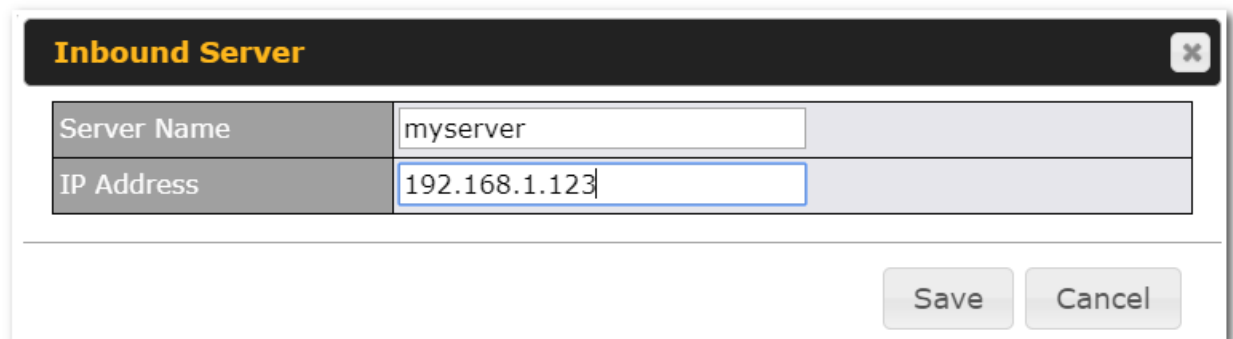
The settings to configure servers on the LAN are located at **Network>Inbound Access>Servers**.

Inbound connections from the Internet will be forwarded to the specified Inbound IP address(es) based on the protocol and port number. When more than one server is defined, requests will be distributed to the servers in the weight ratio specified for each server.



Server Name	IP Address
No Servers Defined	

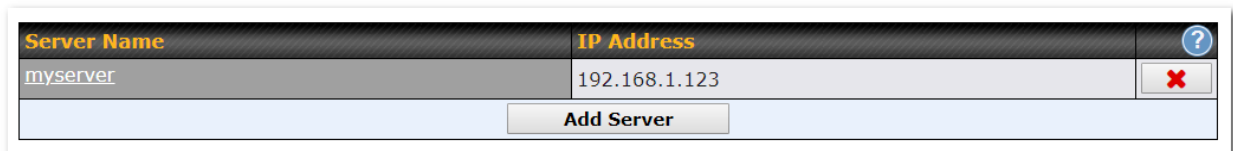
To define a new server, click **Add Server**, which displays the following screen:



**Inbound Server** ✕

Server Name	myserver
IP Address	192.168.1.123

Enter a valid server name and its corresponding LAN IP address. Upon clicking **Save** after entering required information, the following screen appears.



Server Name	IP Address
myserver	192.168.1.123

To define additional servers, click **Add Server** and repeat the above steps.

### 13.5.2 Services

Services are defined at **Network>Inbound Access>Services**.

Service	IP Address(es)	Server	Protocol
No Services Defined			
<input type="button" value="Add Service"/>			

### Tip

At least one server must be defined before services can be added.

To define a new service, click the **Add Service** button, upon which the following menu appears:

**Inbound Service**
✕

Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Service Name	<input type="text"/>
Protocol	TCP ◿ ◀ :: Protocol Selection :: ◿
Port	Any Port ◿
Inbound IP Address(es) (Require at least one IP address) ?	<b>Connection / IP Address(es)</b> <span style="float: right;">All Clear</span>
	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 1
	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2
	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3
	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4
	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 5
	<input type="checkbox"/> Mobile Internet
<input type="checkbox"/> PepVPN	
Included Server(s) (Require at least one IP address) ?	<b>Server</b>
	<input type="checkbox"/> myserver (192.168.1.123)

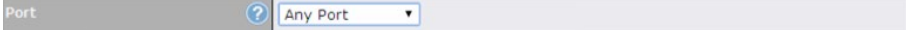
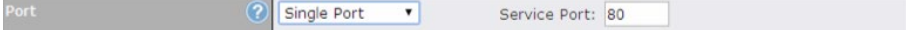
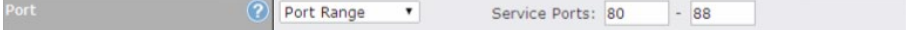

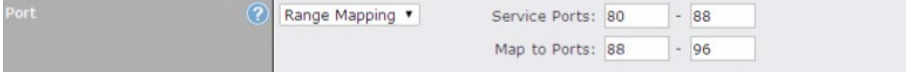
### Services Settings

#### Enable

This setting specifies whether the inbound service rule takes effect.

When **Yes** is selected, the inbound service rule takes effect. If the inbound traffic matches the specified IP protocol and port, action will be taken by the Peplink Balance based on the other parameters of the rule.

When **No** is selected, the inbound service rule does not take effect. The Peplink Balance will disregard the other parameters of the rule.

<b>Service Name</b>	This setting identifies the service to the system administrator. Only alphanumeric and the underscore “_” characters are valid.
<b>IP Protocol</b>	<p>The <b>IP Protocol</b> setting, along with the <b>Port</b> setting, specifies the protocol of the service as TCP, UDP, ICMP, or IP. Inbound traffic that matches the specified <b>IP Protocol</b> and <b>Port(s)</b> will be forwarded to the LAN hosts specified by the <b>Servers</b> setting.</p> <p>Upon choosing a protocol, the <b>Protocol Selection Tool</b> drop-down menu can be used to automatically the port information of common Internet services (e.g. HTTP, HTTPS, etc.).</p> <p>After selecting an item from the <b>Protocol Selection Tool</b> drop-down menu, the protocol and the port number will remain manually modifiable.</p>
<b>Port</b>	<p>The <b>Port</b> setting specifies the port(s) that correspond to the service, and can be configured to behave in one of the following manners:</p> <p><b>Any Port, Single Port, Port Range, Port Map, and Range Mapping</b></p>  <p><b>Any Port:</b> all traffic that is received by the Peplink Balance via the specified protocol is forwarded to the servers specified by the <b>Servers</b> setting.</p> <p>For example, if <b>IP Protocol</b> is set to <b>TCP</b> and <b>Port</b> is set to <b>Any Port</b>, then all TCP traffic will be forwarded to the configured servers.</p>  <p><b>Single Port:</b> traffic that is received by the Peplink Balance via the specified protocol at the specified port is forwarded via the same port to the servers specified by the <b>Servers</b> setting.</p> <p>For example, if <b>IP Protocol</b> is set to <b>TCP</b>, <b>Port</b> is set to <b>Single Port</b>, and <b>Service Port</b> is set to 80, then TCP traffic received on Port 80 will be forwarded to the configured servers via port 80.</p>  <p><b>Port Range:</b> traffic that is received by the Peplink Balance via the specified protocol at the specified port range is forwarded via the same respective ports to the LAN hosts specified by the <b>Servers</b> setting.</p> <p>For example, if <b>IP Protocol</b> is set to <b>TCP</b>, <b>Port</b> is set to <b>Port Range</b>, and <b>Service Port</b> set to 80-88, then TCP traffic received on ports 80 through 88 will be forwarded to the configured servers via the respective ports.</p>  <p><b>Port Mapping:</b> traffic that is received by the Peplink Balance via the specified protocol at the specified port is forwarded via a different port to the servers specified by the <b>Servers</b> setting.</p> <p>For example, if <b>IP Protocol</b> is set to <b>TCP</b>, <b>Port</b> is set to <b>Port Mapping</b>, <b>Service Port</b> is set to 80, and <b>Map to Port</b> is set to 88, then TCP traffic on port 80 is forwarded to the configured servers via port 88.</p> <p>(Please see below for details on the <b>Servers</b> setting.)</p>  <p><b>Range Mapping:</b> traffic that is received by Peplink Balance via the specified protocol at the specified port range is forwarded via a different port to the servers specified by the <b>Servers</b> setting.</p>
<b>Inbound IP</b>	This setting specifies the WAN connections and Internet IP address(es) from which the service

<b>Address(es)</b>	can be accessed.
<b>Included Server(s)</b>	<p>This setting specifies the LAN servers that handle requests for the service, and the relative weight values. The amount of traffic that is distributed to a server is proportional to the weight value assigned to the server relative to the total weight.</p> <p>Example:</p> <p>With the following weight settings on a Peplink Balance:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• demo_server_1: 10</li> <li>• demo_server_2: 5</li> </ul> <p>The total weight is 15 = (10 + 5)</p> <p>Matching traffic distributed to demo_server_1: 67% = (10 / 15) x 100%</p> <p>Matching traffic distributed to demo_server_2: 33% = (5 / 15) x 100%</p>

### UPnP / NAT-PMP Settings

UPnP and NAT-PMP are network protocols which allow a computer connected to the LAN port to automatically configure the router to allow parties on the WAN port to connect to itself. That way, the process of inbound port forwarding becomes automated.

When a computer creates a rule using these protocols, the specified TCP/UDP port of all WAN connections' default IP address will be forwarded.

Check the corresponding box(es) to enable UPnP and/or NAT-PMP. Enable these features only if you trust the computers connected to the LAN ports.

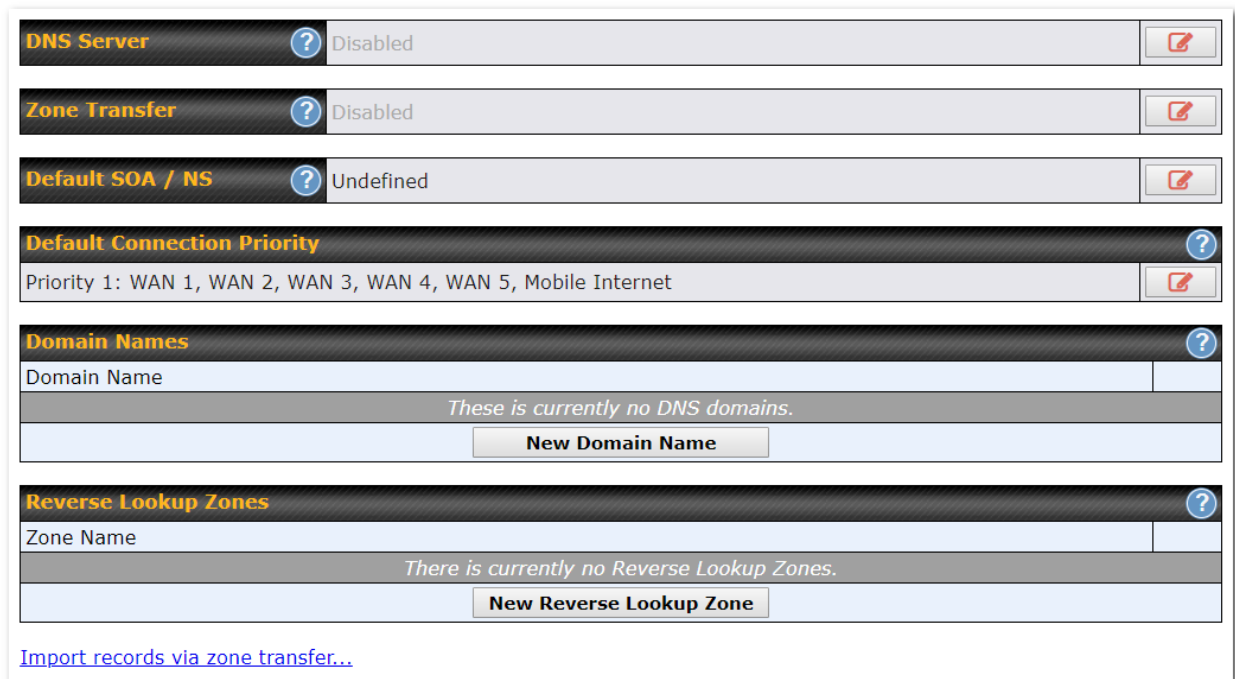
UPnP / NAT-PMP Settings	
UPnP	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable
NAT-PMP	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable
Save	

When the options are enabled, a table listing all the forwarded ports under these two protocols can be found at **Network>Services>UPnP / NAT-PMP**.

### 13.5.3 DNS Settings

The built-in DNS server functionality of the Peplink Balance facilitates inbound load balancing. With this functionality, NS/SOA DNS records for a domain name can be delegated to the Internet IP address(es) of the Peplink Balance. Upon receiving a DNS query, the Peplink Balance can return (as an “A” record) the IP address for the domain name on the most appropriate healthy WAN connection. It can also act as a generic DNS server for hosting “A”, “CNAME”, “MX”, “TXT” and “NS” records.

The settings for defining the DNS records to be hosted by the Peplink Balance are located at **Network>Inbound Access>DNS Settings**.



The screenshot shows the DNS Settings configuration page with the following sections:

- DNS Server:** Disabled
- Zone Transfer:** Disabled
- Default SOA / NS:** Undefined
- Default Connection Priority:** Priority 1: WAN 1, WAN 2, WAN 3, WAN 4, WAN 5, Mobile Internet
- Domain Names:** A table with one row containing the text "These is currently no DNS domains." and a "New Domain Name" button.
- Reverse Lookup Zones:** A table with one row containing the text "There is currently no Reverse Lookup Zones." and a "New Reverse Lookup Zone" button.

At the bottom of the form, there is a link: [Import records via zone transfer..](#)

DNS Settings	
<b>DNS Servers</b>	<p>This setting specifies the WAN IP addresses on which the DNS server of the Peplink Balance should listen.</p> <p>If no addresses are selected, the inbound link load balancing feature will be disabled and the Peplink Balance will not respond to DNS requests.</p>

	<p>To specify and/or modify the IP addresses on which the DNS server should listen, click the button that corresponds to <b>DNS Server</b>, and a selection screen will be displayed:</p> <p>To specify the Internet IP addresses on which the DNS server should listen, select the desired WAN connection then select the desired associated IP addresses. (Multiple items in the list can be selected by holding CTRL and clicking on the items.)</p> <p>Click <b>Save</b> to save the settings when configuration is complete.</p>
<b>Zone Transfer</b>	<p>This setting specifies the IP address(es) of the secondary DNS server(s) authorized to retrieve zone records from the DNS server of the Peplink Balance.</p> <p>The zone transfer server of the Peplink Balance listens on TCP port 53.</p> <p>The Peplink Balance serves both the clients that are accessing from the specified IP addresses, and the clients that are accessing its LAN interface.</p>
<b>Routing Control by Subnet Database</b>	<p>When this function is enabled, the system will check to see if an incoming DNS client is within any WAN's ISP subnet. Only the matched WAN(s)'s IP addresses will be returned. Note that this feature is available only when a subnet database has been defined.</p>
<b>Default SOA / NS</b>	<p>Click the button to define a default SOA / NS record for all domain names.</p> <p>When defining a default SOA record, <b>Name Server IP Address</b> is optional. If left blank, the Address (A) record for the same server should be defined manually in each domain.</p> <p>For defining default NS records, the host <i>[domain]</i> indicates that this record is for the domain name itself without a sub-domain prefix. To add a secondary NS server, just create a second NS record with the <b>Host</b> field left empty. When the entered name server is a fully qualified domain name (FQDN), the <b>IP Address</b> field will be disabled.</p>
<b>Default Connection Priority</b>	<p><b>Default Connection Priority</b> defines the default priority group of each WAN connection in resolving A records. It applies to Address (A) records which have the <b>Connection Priority</b> set to <b>Default</b>. Please refer to <b>Section 17.3.9</b> for details.</p> <p>The WAN connection(s) with the highest priority (smallest number) will be chosen. Those with lower priorities will not be chosen in resolving A records unless the higher priority ones become unavailable.</p> <p>To specify the primary and backup connections, click the button that corresponds to <b>Default Connection Priority</b>. A selection screen will appear.</p> <p>Each WAN connection is associated with a priority number. Click <b>Save</b> to save the settings when configuration is complete.</p>
<b>Domain name</b>	<p>This section shows a list of domain names to be hosted by the Peplink Balance. Each domain can have its "NS", "MX" and "TXT" records, and its sub-domains' "A" and "CNAME" records. Add a new record by clicking the <b>New Domain Name</b> button. Click on a domain name to edit. Press the red X to remove a domain name.</p>

## **New Domain Name**

Upon clicking the New Domain Name button, and the following screen will appear:

**SOA Record** ?

Use Default SOA and NS Records ✎

---

**NS Records** ?

Host	Name Server	TTL (sec)	
<i>There is currently no NS records.</i>			
<input type="button" value="New NS Records"/>			

---

**MX Records** ?

Host	Priority	Mail Server	TTL (sec)	
<i>There is currently no MX records.</i>				
<input type="button" value="New MX Records"/>				

---

**CNAME Records** ?

Host	Points To	TTL (sec)	
<i>There is currently no CNAME records.</i>			
<input type="button" value="New CNAME Record"/>			

---

**A Records** ?

Host	Included IP Address(es)	TTL (sec)	
<i>There is currently no A records.</i>			
<input type="button" value="New A Record"/>			

---

**TXT Records** ?

Host	TXT Value	TTL (sec)	
<i>There is currently no default TXT records.</i>			
<input type="button" value="New TXT Record"/>			

---

**SRV Records** ?

Service	Priority	Weight	Target	Port	TTL (sec)	
<i>There is currently no SRV records</i>						
<input type="button" value="New SRV Record"/>						


This page is for defining the domain's SOA, NS, MX, CNAME, A, TXT, and SRV records. Seven tables are presented in this page for defining the five types of records.

## SOA Records



**Default / Custom SOA Record**
✕

Policy	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Use Default SOA and NS Records <input type="radio"/> Customize SOA Record for this domain
--------	---

Click on the  icon to choose whether to use the pre-defined default SOA record and NS records. If the option **Use Default SOA and NS Records** is selected, any changes made in the default SOA/NS records will be applied to this domain automatically. Otherwise, select the option **Customize SOA Record** for this domain to customize this domain's SOA and NS records.

**SOA Record**
✕

Name Server	?	<input type="text" value="ns1"/>
Name Server IP Address	?	<input type="text"/>
Email	?	<input type="text" value="webmaster"/>
Refresh (sec)	?	<input type="text" value="14400"/>
Retry (sec)	?	<input type="text" value="900"/>
Expire (sec)	?	<input type="text" value="1209600"/>
Min Time (sec)	?	<input type="text" value="3600"/>
TTL (sec)	?	<input type="text" value="3600"/>

This table displays the current SOA record. When the option **Customize SOA Record for this domain** is selected, you can click the link **Click here to define SOA record** to create or click on the **Name Server** field to edit the SOA record.

In the SOA record, you have to fill out the fields **Name Server**, **Name Server IP Address**, **Email**, **Refresh**, **Retry**, **Expire**, **Min Time**, and **TTL**.

Default values are set for SOA and NS records,

- **Name Server IP Address:** This is the IP address of the authoritative name server. An entry in this field is optional. If the Balance is the authoritative name server of the domain, this field's value

should be the WAN connection's name server IP address that is registered in the DNS registrar. If this field is entered, a corresponding A record for the name server will be created automatically. If it is left blank, the A record for the name server must be created manually.

- **E-mail:** Defines the e-mail address of the person responsible for this zone. Note: format should be *mailbox-name.domain.com*, e.g., *hostmaster.example.com*.
- **Refresh:** Indicates the length of time (in seconds) when the slave will try to refresh the zone from the master.
- **Retry:** Defines the duration (in seconds) between retries if the slave (secondary) fails to contact the master and the refresh (above) has expired.
- **Expire:** Indicates the time (in seconds) when the zone data is no longer authoritative. This option applies to slave DNS servers only.
- **Min Time:** Is the negative caching time which defines the time (in seconds) after an error record is cached.
- **TTL (Time-to-Live):** Defines the duration (in seconds) that the record may be cached.

## NS Records

The **NS Records** table shows the NS servers and TTL that correspond to the domain. The NS record of the name server defined in the SOA record is automatically added here.

To add a new NS record, click the **New NS Records** button in the **NS Records** box. Then the table will expand to look like the following:

**NS Records** ✕

Host	<input style="width: 95%;" type="text"/>
------	--

Name Server	TTL (sec)	
<input style="width: 95%;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 95%;" type="text" value="3600"/>	<input style="width: 30px; height: 20px;" type="button" value="+"/>

When creating an NS record for the domain itself (not a sub-domain), the **Host** field should be left blank. Enter a name server host name and its IP address into the corresponding boxes. The host name can be a non-FQDN (fully qualified domain name). Please be sure that a corresponding A record is created. Click the  button on the right to finish and to add other name servers. Click the **Save** button to save your changes.

## MX Records

The **MX Record** table shows the domain's MX records. To add a new MX record, click the **New MX Records** button in the **MX Records** box. Then the table will expand to look like the following:

When creating an MX record for the domain itself (not a sub-domain), the **Host** field should be left blank. For each record, **Priority and Mail Server** name must be entered. **Priority** typically ranges from 10 to 100. Smaller numbers have a higher priority. After finishing adding MX records, click the **Save** button.

### CNAME Records

The **CNAME Record** table shows the domain's CNAME records. To add a new CNAME record, click the **New CNAME Records** button in the **CNAME Record** box. Then the table will expand to look like the following:

When creating a CNAME record for the domain itself (not a sub-domain), the **Host** field should be left blank. The wildcard character "\*" is supported in the **Host** field. The reference of ".domain.name" will be returned for every name ending with ".domain.name" except names that have their own records. The **TTL** field tells the time to live of the record in external DNS caches.

### A Records

This table shows the A records of the domain name. To add an A record, click the **New A Record** button.

The following screen will appear:

**A Record**
✕

Host	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
TTL (sec)	5 <span style="font-size: small; border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">This is equivalent to demopeplink.com.</span>
Priority	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Default <input type="radio"/> Custom

Included IP Address(es)
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 1
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 5
<input type="checkbox"/> Mobile Internet
<input type="checkbox"/> Custom IP Address


A record may be automatically added for the SOA records with a name server IP address provided.

A Record	
<b>Host Name</b>	This field specifies the A record of this sub-domain to be served by the Peplink Balance. The wildcard character "*" is supported. The IP addresses of "*.domain.name" will be returned for every name ending with ".domain.name" except names that have their own records.
<b>TTL</b>	This setting specifies the time to live of this record in external DNS caches. In order to reflect any dynamic changes on the IP addresses in case of link failure and recovery, this value should be set to a smaller value, e.g., 5 secs, 60 secs, etc.
<b>Priority</b>	This option specifies the priority of different connections. Select the <b>Default</b> option to apply the <b>Default Connection Priority</b> (refer to the table shown on the main DNS settings page) to an A record. To customize priorities, choose the <b>Custom</b> option and a priority selection table will be shown at the bottom.
<b>Included IP</b>	This setting specifies lists of WAN-specific Internet IP addresses that are candidates to be returned when the Peplink Balance responds to DNS queries for the domain name specified

## Address(es)

by **Host Name**.

The IP addresses listed in each box as **default** are the Internet IP addresses associated with each of the WAN connections. Static IP addresses that are not associated with any WAN can be entered into the **Custom IP** list. A PTR record is also created for each custom IP.

For WAN connections that operate under drop-in mode, there may be other routable IP addresses in addition to the default IP address. Therefore, the Peplink Balance allows custom Internet IP addresses to be added manually via filling the text box on the right-hand side and clicking the  button.

Only the checked IP addresses in the lists are candidates to be returned when responding to a DNS query.

If a WAN connection is down, the corresponding set of IP addresses will not be returned. However, the IP addresses in the **Custom IP Address** field will always be returned.

If the **Connection Priority** field is set to **Custom**, you can also specify the usage priority of each WAN connection. Only selected IP address(es) of available connection(s) with the highest priority, and custom IP addresses will be returned. By default, **Connection Priority** is set to **Default**.

## PTR Records

PTR records are created along with A records pointing to custom IPs. For example, if you created an A record *www.mydomain.com* pointing to *11.22.33.44*, then a PTR record *44.33.22.11.in-addr.arpa* pointing to *www.mydomain.com* will also be created. When there are multiple host names pointing to the same IP address, only one PTR record for the IP address will be created. In order for PTR records to function, you also need to create NS records. For example, if the IP address range *11.22.33.0* to *11.22.33.255* is delegated to the DNS server on the Peplink Balance, you will also have to create a domain *33.22.11.in-addr.arpa* and have its NS records pointing to your DNS server's (the Peplink Balance's) public IP addresses. With the above records created, the PTR record creation is complete.

## TXT Records

This table shows the TXT record of the domain name.

TXT Record	
Host	<input type="text"/>
TXT Value	<input type="text" value="This is equivalent to demopeplink.com."/>
TTL (sec)	<input type="text" value="3600"/>

To add a new TXT record, click the **New TXT Record** button in the **TXT Records** box. Click the **Edit** button to edit the record. The time-to-live value and the TXT record's value can be entered. Click the **Save** button to finish.

When creating a TXT record for the domain itself (not a sub-domain), the **Host** field should be left blank. The maximum size of the TXT Value is 255 bytes.

After editing the five types of records, you can leave the page by simply going to another section of the web admin interface.

## SRV Records

To add a new SRV record, click the **New SRV Record** button in the **SRV Records** box.

**SRV Records**

Service:

Priority	Weight	Target	Port	TTL (sec)	
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	3600	<input type="button" value="+"/>

Save Cancel

- **Service:** The symbolic name of the desired service.
- **Priority:** Indicates the priority of the target; the smaller the value, the higher the priority.
- **Weight:** A relative weight for records with the same priority.
- **Target:** The canonical hostname of the machine providing the service.
- **Port:** Enter the TCP or UDP port number on which the service is to be found.

## Reverse Lookup Zones

Reverse lookup zones can be configured in **Network>Inbound Access>DNS Settings**.

**New Reverse Lookup Zone**

Zone Name: .in-addr.arpa

Save Cancel

Reverse lookup refers to performing a DNS query to find one or more DNS names associated with a given IP address.

The DNS stores IP addresses in the form of specially formatted names as pointer (PTR) records using special domains/zones. The zone is *in-addr.arpa*.

To enable DNS clients to perform a reverse lookup for a host, perform two steps:

- Create a reverse lookup zone that corresponds to the subnet network address of the host.  
In the reverse lookup zone, add a pointer (PTR) resource record that maps the host IP address to the host name.
- Click the **New Reverse Lookup Zone** button and enter a reverse lookup zone name. If you are delegated the subnet *11.22.33.0/24*, the **Zone Name** should be *33.22.11.in-arpa.addr*. PTR records for *11.22.33.1*, *11.22.33.2*, ... *11.22.33.254* should be defined in this zone where the host



IP numbers are 1, 2, ... 254, respectively.

**33.22.11.in-addr.arpa**
✕

**SOA Record**
?

WARNING: You should define SOA record in your zone!  
[Click here to define SOA Record](#)

**NS Records**
?

Host	Name Server	TTL (sec)	
<p>WARNING: You should define NS records in your zone!</p>			
<input type="button" value="New NS Records"/>			

**CNAME Records**
?

Host	Points To	TTL (sec)	
<p>There is currently no CNAME records.</p>			
<input type="button" value="New CNAME Record"/>			

**PTR Records**
?

Host IP Number	Points To	TTL (sec)	
<p>There is currently no PTR records.</p>			
<input type="button" value="New PTR Record"/>			

## SOA Record

You can click the link **Click here to define SOA record** to create or click on the **Name Server** field to edit the SOA record.

**SOA Record**
✕

Name Server	?	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>
Email	?	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="webmaster"/>
Refresh (sec)	?	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="14400"/>
Retry (sec)	?	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="900"/>
Expire (sec)	?	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="1209600"/>
Min Time (sec)	?	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="3600"/>
TTL (sec)	?	<input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="3600"/>

**Name Server:** Enter the NS record's FQDN server name here.

For "ns1.mydomain.com" (equivalent to "www.1stdomain.com.") example:  
 "ns2.mydomain.com."

**Email, Refresh, Retry, Expire, Min Time, and TTL** are entered in the same way as in the forward zone. Please refer to **Section 17.3.5** for details.

## NS Records

**NS Records** [X]

Host		
Name Server	TTL (sec)	
	3600	+

Save Cancel

The NS record of the name server defined in the SOA record is automatically added here. To create a new NS record, click the **New NS Records** button.

When creating an NS record for the *reverse lookup zone* itself (not a sub-domain or dedicated zone), the **Host** field should be left blank. **Name Server** must be a FQDN.

### CNAME Records

**CNAME Record** [X]

Host		
Points To		
TTL (sec)	3600	

Save Cancel

To create a new CNAME record, click the **New CNAME Record** button.

CNAME records are typically used for defining classless reverse lookup zones. Subnetted reverse lookup zones are further described in RFC 2317, "Classless IN-ADDR.ARPA delegation."

### PTR Records

PTR Record	
Host IP Number	<input type="text"/>
Points To	<input type="text"/> <small>This is equivalent to 33.22.11.in-addr.arpa.</small>
TTL (sec)	<input type="text" value="3600"/>

To create a new PTR record, click the **New PTR Record** button.

For **Host IP Number** field, enter the last integer in the IP address of a PTR record. For example, for the IP address *11.22.33.44*, where the reverse lookup zone is *33.22.11.in-addr.arpa*, the **Host IP Number** should be *44*.

The **Points To** field defines the host name which the PTR record should be pointed to. It must be a FQDN.

### DNS Record Import Wizard

At the bottom of the DNS settings page, the link **Import records via zone transfer...** is used to import DNS record using an import wizard.

**DNS Record Import Wizard**

This wizard allows you to import DNS records from an existing DNS server via zone transfer.

Requirement: Your existing DNS server is configured to allow one of the WAN's default IP addresses to transfer DNS zone records.

To continue, click Next.

- Select **Next >>** to continue.

**DNS Record Import Wizard**
✕

**Step 1 of 3**

Target DNS Server IP Address:

Transfer via...

WAN 1
▼

---

<< Back
Next >>
Cancel

- In the **Target DNS Server IP Address** field, enter the IP address of the DNS server.
- In the **Transfer via...** field, choose the connection which you would like to transfer through.
- Select **Next >>** to continue.

**DNS Record Import Wizard**
✕

**Step 2 of 3**

Domain Names (Zones):

mycompany.com  
 peplink.com

(One domain name per line)

---

<< Back
Next >>
Cancel

- In the blank space, enter the **Domain Names (Zones)** which you would like to assign the IP address entered in the previous step. Enter one domain name per line.
- Select **Next >>** to continue.

**Important Note**

If you have entered domain(s) which already exist in your settings, a warning message will appear. Select **Next >>** to

overwrite the existing record or << **Back** to go back to the previous step.

**DNS Record Import Wizard** ✕

**Step 2 of 3 (Continue)**

WARNING: The following domain(s) already exist:

peplink.com

The existing records of these domains will be overwritten.

<< Back
Next >>
Cancel

**DNS Record Import Wizard** ✕

Fetching zone records...

Abort

**DNS Record Import Wizard** ✕

**Step 3 of 3**

**Fetch Results**

Domain	Result	Details
peplink.com	Ok	
mycompany.com	Ok	

Cancel

After the zone records process have been fetched, the fetch results would be shown as above. You can

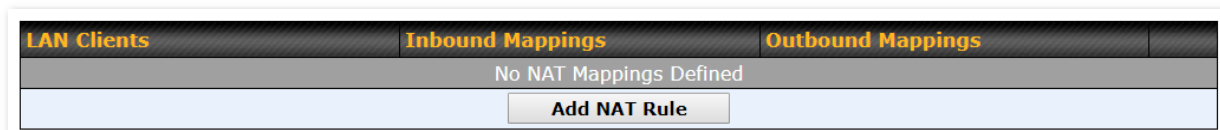
view import details by clicking the corresponding hyperlink on the right-hand side.

Zone: mytest.com		
Record Type	Name	Value
SOA	mytest.com	ns1.mytest.com.
NS	mytest.com	ns1.mytest.com.
NS	mytest.com	ns2.mytest.com.
NS	mytest.com	ns3.mytest.com.
NS	mytest.com	ns4.mytest.com.
MX	mytest.com	mail01.mytest.com.
MX	mytest.com	1.us.testinglabs.com.
MX	mytest.com	backup.mytest.com.
MX	mytest.com	2.us.testinglabs.com.
A	backup.mytest.com	210.120.111.12
A	download.mytest.com	33.11.22.33
A	guest.mytest.com	126.132.111.0

## 13.6 NAT Mappings

The Peplink Balance allows the IP address mapping of all inbound and outbound NATed traffic to and from an internal client IP address.

NAT mappings can be configured at **Network>NAT Mappings**.



To add a rule for NAT mappings, click **Add NAT Rule** and the following screen will be displayed:

**NAT Mappings**
✕

LAN Client(s) <span style="float: right;">?</span>	IP Address ▾												
Address <span style="float: right;">?</span>	192.168.1.123												
Inbound Mappings <span style="float: right;">?</span>	<div style="background-color: #333; color: white; padding: 2px;"><b>Connection / Inbound IP Address(es)</b></div> <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 1 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 5 <input type="checkbox"/> Mobile Internet <input type="checkbox"/> PepVPN												
Outbound Mappings <span style="float: right;">?</span>	<div style="background-color: #333; color: white; padding: 2px;"><b>Connection / Outbound IP Address</b></div> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">WAN 1</td><td style="padding: 2px;">10.22.1.182 (Interface IP) ▾</td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">WAN 2</td><td style="padding: 2px;">Interface IP ▾</td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">WAN 3</td><td style="padding: 2px;">Interface IP ▾</td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">WAN 4</td><td style="padding: 2px;">192.168.254.10 (Interface IP) ▾</td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">WAN 5</td><td style="padding: 2px;">Interface IP ▾</td></tr> <tr><td style="padding: 2px;">Mobile Internet</td><td style="padding: 2px;">Interface IP ▾</td></tr> </table>	WAN 1	10.22.1.182 (Interface IP) ▾	WAN 2	Interface IP ▾	WAN 3	Interface IP ▾	WAN 4	192.168.254.10 (Interface IP) ▾	WAN 5	Interface IP ▾	Mobile Internet	Interface IP ▾
WAN 1	10.22.1.182 (Interface IP) ▾												
WAN 2	Interface IP ▾												
WAN 3	Interface IP ▾												
WAN 4	192.168.254.10 (Interface IP) ▾												
WAN 5	Interface IP ▾												
Mobile Internet	Interface IP ▾												

NAT Mapping Settings	
<b>LAN Client(s)</b>	NAT Mapping rules can be defined for a single LAN <b>IP Address</b> , an <b>IP Range</b> , or an <b>IP Network</b> .
<b>Address</b>	This refers to the LAN host's private IP address. The system maps this address to a number of public IP addresses (specified below) in order to facilitate inbound and outbound traffic. This option is only available when <b>IP Address</b> is selected.
<b>Range</b>	The IP range is a contiguous group of private IP addresses used by the LAN host. The system maps these addresses to a number of public IP addresses (specified below) to facilitate outbound traffic. This option is only available when <b>IP Range</b> is selected.



<b>Network</b>	The IP network refers to all private IP addresses and ranges managed by the LAN host. The system maps these addresses to a number of public IP addresses (specified below) to facilitate outbound traffic. This option is only available when <b>IP Network</b> is selected.
<b>Inbound Mappings</b>	<p>This setting specifies the WAN connections and corresponding WAN-specific Internet IP addresses on which the system should bind. Any access to the specified WAN connection(s) and IP address(es) will be forwarded to the LAN host. This option is only available when <b>IP Address</b> is selected in the <b>LAN Client(s)</b> field.</p> <p>Note 1: Inbound mapping is not needed for WAN connections in drop-in mode or IP forwarding mode.</p> <p>Note 2: Each WAN IP address can be associated to one NAT mapping only.</p>
<b>Outbound Mappings</b>	<p>This setting specifies the WAN IP addresses should be used when an IP connection is made from a LAN host to the Internet.</p> <p>Each LAN host in an IP range or IP network will be evenly mapped to one of each selected WAN's IP addresses (for better IP address utilization) in a persistent manner (for better application compatibility).</p> <p>Note 1: If you do not want to use a specific WAN for outgoing accesses, you should still choose default here, then customize the outbound access rule in the <b>Outbound Policy</b> section.</p> <p>Note 2: WAN connections in drop-in mode or IP forwarding mode are not shown here.</p>

Click **Save** to save the settings when configuration has been completed.

### Important Note

Inbound firewall rules override inbound mapping settings.

## 13.7 MediaFast

MediaFast settings can be configured by navigating to **Network > MediaFast**.

### Setting Up MediaFast Content Caching

To access MediaFast content caching settings, select **Network > MediaFast**.

MediaFast	
Enable	<input type="checkbox"/>
Domains / IP Addresses	<input type="radio"/> Cache all <input type="radio"/> Whitelist <input checked="" type="radio"/> Blacklist <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; height: 100px; width: 100%;"></div>
Source IP Subnet	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Any <input type="radio"/> Custom

MediaFast	
<b>Enable</b>	Click the checkbox to enable MediaFast content caching.
<b>Domains / IP Addresses</b>	Choose to <b>Cache on all domains</b> , or enter domain names and then choose either <b>Whitelist</b> (cache the specified domains only) or <b>Blacklist</b> (do not cache the specified domains).
<b>Source IP Subnet</b>	This setting allows caching to be enabled on custom subnets only. If "Any" is selected, then caching will apply to all subnets.

Secure Content Caching	
Enable	<input type="checkbox"/> Note: Please enable MediaFast for Secure Content Caching
Domains / IP Addresses	<input type="radio"/> Cache all <input checked="" type="radio"/> Whitelist <input type="radio"/> Blacklist <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;">             googlevideo.com              youtube.com           </div>
Source IP Subnet	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Any <input type="radio"/> Custom

The **Secure Content Caching** menu operates identically to the **MediaFast** menu, except it is for secure content caching accessible through https://. In order for Mediafast devices to cache and deliver HTTPS content, every client needs to have the

necessary

certificates

installed\*.

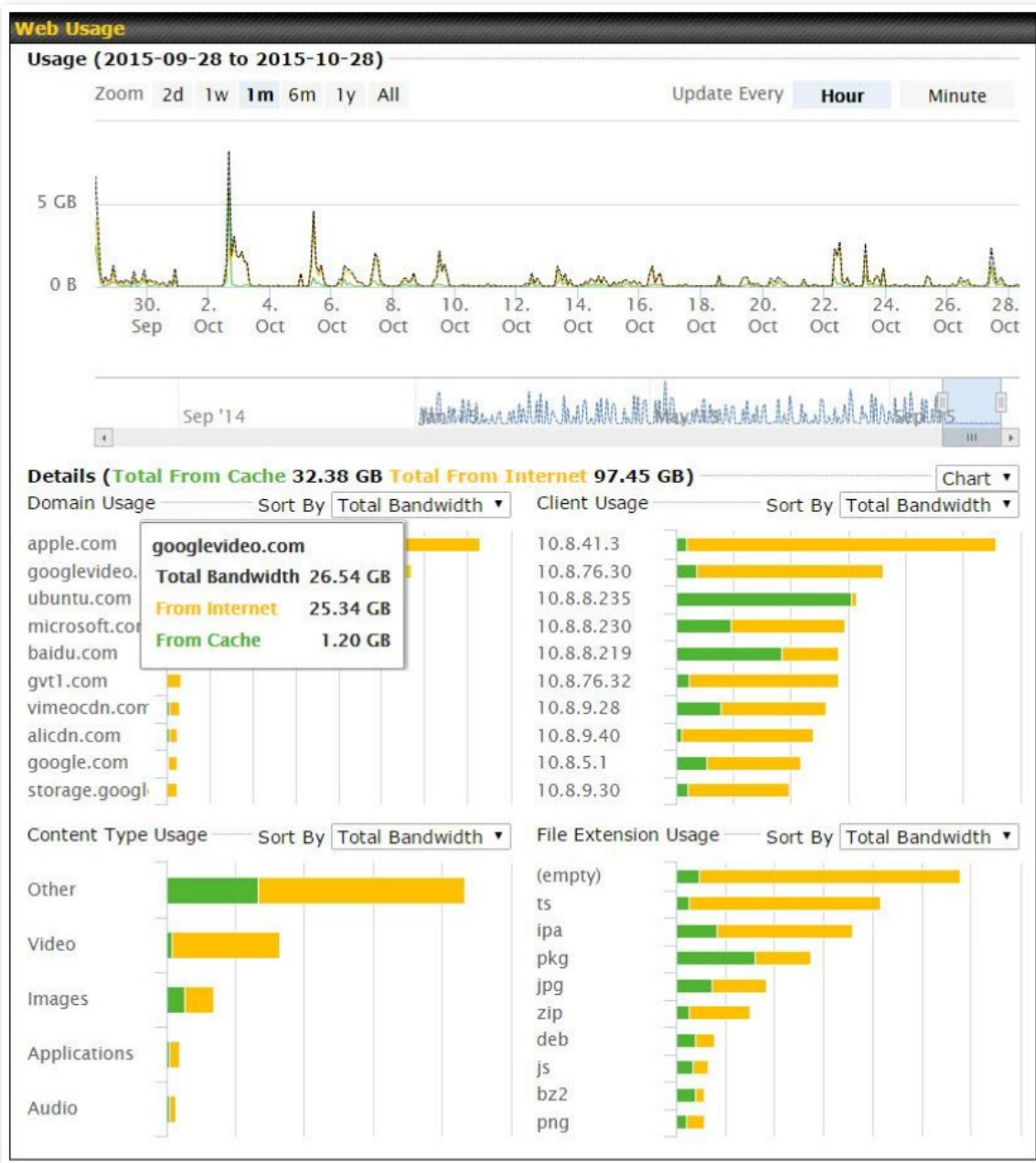
\*See <https://forum.peplink.com/t/certificate-installation-for-mediafast-https-caching/>

Cache Control			
Content Type	<span>?</span>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Video <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Audio <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Images <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> OS / Application Updates	
Cache Lifetime Settings	<span>?</span>	File Extension	Lifetime (days)
		<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
			<input type="button" value="+"/>

Cache Control	
<b>Content Type</b>	Check these boxes to cache the listed content types or leave boxes unchecked to disable caching for the listed types.
<b>Cache Lifetime Settings</b>	Enter a file extension, such as JPG or DOC. Then enter a lifetime in days to specify how long files with that extension will be cached. Add or delete entries using the controls on the right.

### Viewing MediaFast Statistics

To get details on storage and bandwidth usage, select **Status>MediaFast**.



## Prefetch Schedule

Content prefetching allows you to download content on a schedule that you define, which can help to preserve network bandwidth during busy times and keep costs down. To access MediaFast content prefetching settings, select **Network > MediaFast > Prefetch Schedule**.

Prefetch Schedule							
Name	Status	Next Run Time	Last Run Time	Last Duration	Result	Last Download	Actions
▶ Course Progress	Downloading	04-11 06:00	04-09 02:03	-		0 B	
▶ National Geog	Ready	04-11 00:00	04-09 00:00	00:01		4.98 kB	
▶ Syllabus	Downloading	04-11 06:00	04-09 06:00	-		0 B	
▶ Vimeo	Ready	04-11 00:00	04-09 02:03	00:01		115.91 kB	
▶ ted	Ready	04-11 00:00	04-09 00:00	00:01		62.26 kB	
<a href="#">New Schedule</a>							

Tools	
<a href="#">Clear Web Cache</a>	<a href="#">Clear Statistics</a>

Prefetch Schedule Settings	
<b>Name</b>	This field displays the name given to the scheduled download.
<b>Status</b>	Check the status of your scheduled download here.
<b>Next Run Time/Last Run Time</b>	These fields display the date and time of the next and most recent occurrences of the scheduled download.
<b>Last Duration</b>	Check this field to ensure that the most recent download took as long as expected to complete. A value that is too low might indicate an incomplete download or incorrectly specified download target, while a value that is too long could mean a download with an incorrectly specified target or stop time.
<b>Result</b>	This field indicates whether downloads are in progress () or complete () .
<b>Last Download</b>	Check this field to ensure that the most recent download file size is within the expected range. A value that is too low might indicate an incomplete download or incorrectly specified download target, while a value that is too long could mean a download with an incorrectly specified target or stop time. This field is also useful for quickly seeing which downloads are consuming the most storage space.
<b>Actions</b>	<p>To begin a scheduled download immediately, click  .</p> <p>To cancel a scheduled download, click  .</p> <p>To edit a scheduled download, click  .</p> <p>To delete a scheduled download, click  .</p>
<b>New Schedule</b>	Click to begin creating a new scheduled download. Clicking the button will cause the following

screen to appear:

MediaFast Schedule							
Name (optional)	<input type="text"/>						
Active	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>						
URL	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>URL</td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input style="background-color: #e0e0e0; border: none;" type="button" value="+"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input style="background-color: #e0e0e0; border: none;" type="button" value="+"/></td> </tr> </table>	URL	<input type="text"/>	<input style="background-color: #e0e0e0; border: none;" type="button" value="+"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input style="background-color: #e0e0e0; border: none;" type="button" value="+"/>
URL	<input type="text"/>	<input style="background-color: #e0e0e0; border: none;" type="button" value="+"/>					
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input style="background-color: #e0e0e0; border: none;" type="button" value="+"/>					
Depth	2 ▾ levels <b>Default</b>						
Time Period	From 00 ▾ : 00 ▾ to 01 ▾ : 00 ▾						
Repeat	Everyday ▾						
Bandwidth Limit	0 <input type="text"/> Gbps ▾ (0: Unlimited)						

Simply provide the requested information to create your schedule.

**Clear Web Cache**

Click to clear all cached content. Note that this action cannot be undone.

**Clear Statistics**

Click to clear all prefetch and status page statistics.

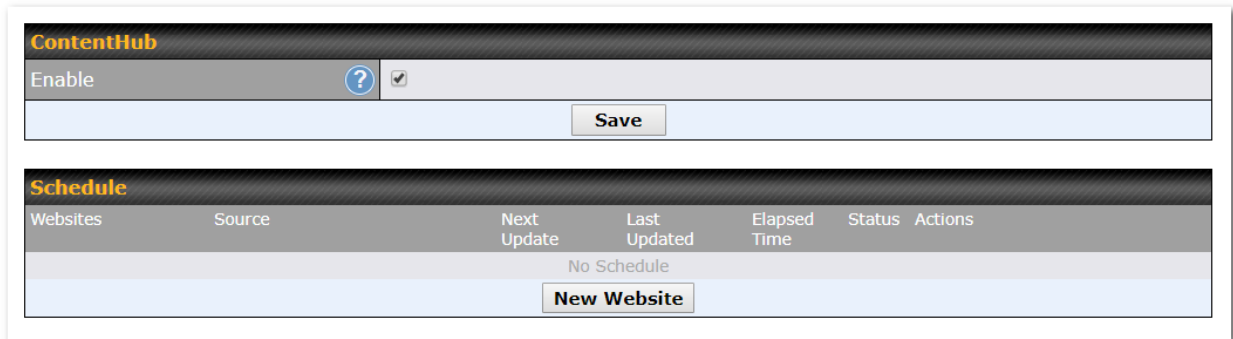
## 13.8 ContentHub

Integrated into MediaFast-enabled routers, ContentHub allows you to deliver webpages and applications using the local storage on your router. Users will be able to access news, articles, videos, and access your web app, without the need for internet access.

ContentHub Storage needs to be configured before content can be uploaded to the ContentHub. Follow the link on the information panel to configure storage.

ContentHub storage has not been configured. Click [here](#) to review storage configuration

To access ContentHub, navigate to **Network > ContentHub** and check the **Enable** box.:



On an external server configure content (a website or application) that will be synced to the ContentHub; for example a html5 website.

To configure a website or application as content follow these steps.

### Configure a website to be published from the ContentHub

This option allows you to sync a website to the Peplink router, this website will then be published with the specified domain from the router itself and makes the content available to the client via the HTTP/HTTPS protocol.

Only FTP sync is supported for this type of ContentHub content. The content should be uploaded to an FTP server before.

Click **New Website**, and the following configuration options will appear:

**Schedule**
✕

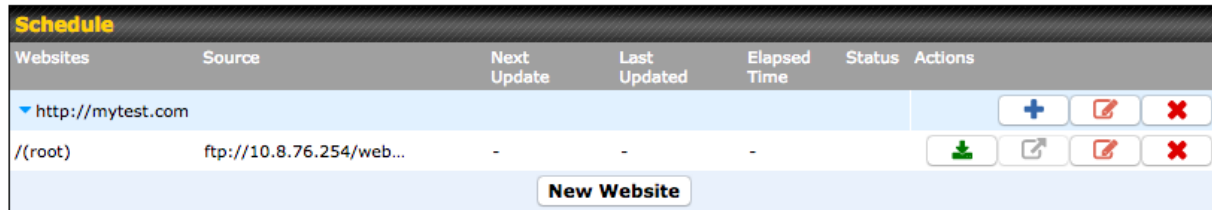
Active	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Website <input type="radio"/> Application
Protocol	HTTP ▾
Domain/Path <span style="font-size: 0.8em; color: #00aaff; border: 1px solid #00aaff; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">?</span>	http:// <input style="width: 150px;" type="text"/>
Source	<div style="display: flex; align-items: flex-start;"> <div style="margin-right: 10px;">             ftp ▾ ://              Username:              Password:           </div> <div style="border-bottom: 1px solid #ccc; width: 100%;"></div> <div style="border-bottom: 1px solid #ccc; width: 100%;"></div> </div>
Period	Everyday ▾ From 00 ▾ : 00 ▾ to 01 ▾ : 00 ▾
Bandwidth Limit	0 <input style="width: 40px;" type="text"/> Gbps ▾ (0: Unlimited)

The Active checkbox toggles the activation of the content. For type, select Website.

<b>Type</b>	HTTP,HTTPS or both
<b>Domain/Path</b>	The contenthub uses this as the domain name for client access (such as http://mytest.com).
<b>Source</b>	Enter the server details that the content will be downloaded from. Enter your credentials under <b>Username</b> and <b>Password</b> .
<b>Period</b>	This field determines how often the Router will search for updates to the source content.
<b>Method</b>	Only applicable for application: Choose between sync or file upload
<b>Bandwidth Limit</b>	Used to limit the bandwidth for each client to access the web server.




Click “Save & Apply Now” to activate the changes. Below is a screenshot after configuration:

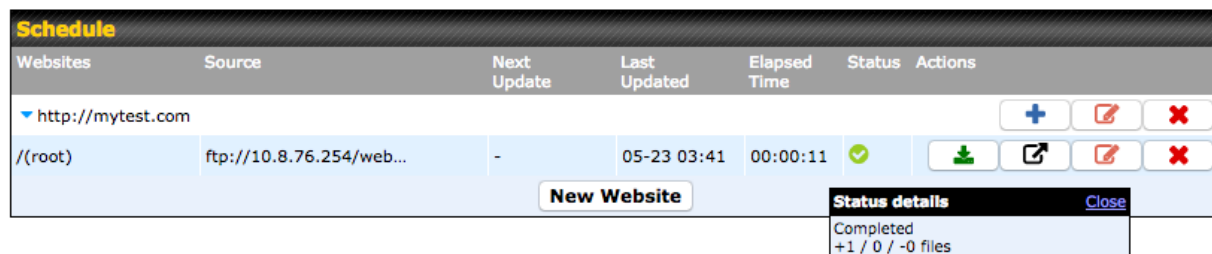


Websites	Source	Next Update	Last Updated	Elapsed Time	Status	Actions
▼ http://mytest.com						+ ✎ ✖
/(root)	ftp://10.8.76.254/web...	-	-	-		↓ ↗ ✎ ✖

[New Website](#)

The content will be synced based on the **Period** that is configured before. If you want to trigger the sync manually, you can click “”. The “Status” column shows the sync progress.

When the sync is completed, you’ll see a summary as shown in the screenshot below:



Websites	Source	Next Update	Last Updated	Elapsed Time	Status	Actions
▼ http://mytest.com						+ ✎ ✖
/(root)	ftp://10.8.76.254/web...	-	05-23 03:41	00:00:11	✓	↓ ↗ ✎ ✖

[New Website](#)

**Status details** [Close](#)  
 Completed  
 +1 / 0 / -0 files

To access the content, open a browser in MFA’s client and enter the domain configured before (such as http://mytest.com).

## Configure an application to be published from the ContentHub

Mediafast Routers allow you to configure and publish ant application from the router itself by using the supported framework

- Python (version 2.7.12)
- Ruby (version 2.3.3)
- Node.js (version 6.9.2)

First install the desired framework in “Package Manager” as below:

peplink Dashboard Setup Wizard Network AP System Status Apply Changes

**System**

- Admin Security
- Firmware
- Time
- Schedule
- Email Notification
- Event Log
- SNMP
- InControl
- Configuration
- Feature Add-ons
- Reboot

**Tools**

- Ping
- Traceroute
- Wake-on-LAN
- Storage Manager
- Package Manager

Logout

(Last Update: Tue May 23 04:02:36 UTC 2017)

**Package List** Update All

<b>Node.js</b> Version: 6.9.2 (17178) Size: 8.99 MB Date: Fri Feb 24 07:45:28 UTC 2017	<input type="button" value="↓"/>
<b>Python</b> Version: 2.7.12 (17178) Size: 20.29 MB Date: Fri Feb 24 07:45:28 UTC 2017	<input type="button" value="↓"/>
<b>Ruby</b> Version: 2.3.3 (17178) Size: 31.44 MB Date: Fri Feb 24 07:45:30 UTC 2017	<input type="button" value="↓"/>

After installing the framework, you can select the type to “Application” and configure the website:

**Schedule**
✕

Active	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Type	<input type="radio"/> Website <input checked="" type="radio"/> Application
Protocol	HTTP
Domain	http:// <input type="text"/>
Method	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Sync <input type="radio"/> File Upload
Source	<div style="display: flex; align-items: flex-start;"> <div style="margin-right: 5px;">ftp</div> <div style="border-bottom: 1px solid #ccc; flex-grow: 1; position: relative;"> <span style="position: absolute; top: -10px; left: 5px;">://</span> </div> </div> <div style="margin-top: 5px;">Username: <input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/></div> <div style="margin-top: 5px;">Password: <input style="width: 100%;" type="password"/></div>
Period	<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 5px; margin-right: 5px;">Everyday</div> <div style="margin-left: 5px;">↓</div> </div> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center; margin-top: 5px;"> <span>From</span> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 5px; margin: 0 5px;">00</div> <span>:</span> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 5px; margin: 0 5px;">00</div> <span> to </span> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 5px; margin: 0 5px;">01</div> <span>:</span> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 5px; margin: 0 5px;">00</div> </div>
Bandwidth Limit	<input type="text" value="0"/> <div style="margin-left: 10px;">Gbps (0: Unlimited)</div>

Save & Apply Now

Cancel

The setting is the same as Website type and you can refer to the description in the above section

For the Application type, you need to pack your application as below:

1. Implement two bash script files, start.sh and stop.sh in root folder, to start and stop your application. the Mediafast router will only execute start.sh and stop.sh when the corresponding website is enabled and disabled respectively.
2. Compress your application files and the bash script to tar.gz format.
3. Upload this tar file to the router.

## MDM Settings

In addition to performing content caching, MediaFast-enabled routers can also serve as an MDM, administrating to client devices. To access MDM Settings, navigate to **Network > MDM Settings**:

MDM Settings	
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Account Settings	<input type="radio"/> Follow Web Admin Account <input checked="" type="radio"/> Custom
Username	<input type="text"/>
Password	<input type="password"/>
Confirm Password	<input type="password"/>

MDM Settings	
<b>Enable</b>	Click this checkbox to enable MDM on your router.
<b>Account Settings</b>	Click <b>Follow Web Admin Account</b> to allow client devices to use the built-in administrator account when performing MDM. Set <b>Custom</b> to specify a username and password your router will use to log into your client devices.

Please refer to the knowledgebase for information about enrolling client devices to MDM:

<https://forum.peplink.com/t/how-to-enroll-a-device-to-the-mdm-server/8454>

## Docker

MediaFast enabled routers can host Docker containers when running firmware 7.1 or later.

Docker is an open platform for developing, shipping, and running applications.

From firmware version 7.1.0 upwards it is possible to install and run Docker Containers on your Peplink Mediafast 500 or 750 router.

Due to the nature of Docker and its unlimited variables; this feature is supported by Peplink up to the point of creating a running Docker Container.

Information about Docker can be found on the Docker Documentation site: <https://docs.docker.com/> 2

This will allow you to run for example a file sharing platform (Owncloud), a web server (Wordpress, Joomla) , a learning platform (Moodle) or a visualisation tool for viewing large scale data (Kibana).

The Peplink router will search through the Docker Hub repository when creating a new Docker Container. <https://hub.docker.com/explore/> 7

For detailed configuration instructions please refer to our knowledge base:

<https://forum.peplink.com/t/how-to-run-a-docker-application-on-a-peplink-mediafast-router/16021>

## KVM

Mediafast enabled routers now support KVM. Users will have to download and install Virtual Machine Manager to manage the KVM virtual machines, through this users are able to virtualise the linux environment.

The screenshot shows the Peplink web interface with the 'Network' tab selected. The left sidebar contains a menu with categories: WAN, LAN, VPN, Outbound Policy, Inbound Access, NAT Mappings, MediaFast, ContentHub, Docker, KVM (highlighted), and MDM Settings. The main content area shows the 'KVM' configuration page. At the top, there is a 'KVM' header. Below it, there is a row with 'Enable' and a checked checkbox. A 'Save' button is located below the checkbox. Below the checkbox, there is a link: 'Click [here](#) to open file manager'.

For detailed configuration instructions please refer to our knowledge base:

<https://forum.peplink.com/t/how-to-install-virtual-machine-into-peplink-routers/29269>

## 13.9 Captive Portal

The screenshot shows the Peplink web interface with the 'Captive Portal' configuration page. The 'Captive Portal' section is expanded, showing 'Access Mode' and 'Info' tabs. The 'No Captive Portal' message is displayed, and a 'New Portal' button is visible.

The captive portal serves as a gateway that clients have to pass if they wish to access the Internet using your router. To configure, navigate to **Network>Captive Portal**.

### Captive Portal ✕

**General Settings**

Name	<input type="text" value="demoportal"/>	
Enable	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Hostname	<input type="text" value="captive-portal.peplink.com"/> <span style="float: right;">Default</span>	
Access Mode	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Open Access <input type="radio"/> User Authentication <input type="radio"/> External Server	

**Portal Access Settings**

Access Quota	<input type="text" value="30"/> mins (0: Unlimited)
	<input type="text" value="0"/> MB (0: Unlimited)
Quota Reset Time	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Daily at <input type="text" value="00"/> :00 <input type="radio"/> 1440 minutes after quota reached
Inactive Timeout	<input type="text" value="0"/> minutes (0: No Timeout)
Allowed Networks	<input type="text" value="Domain Name / IP Address / Network"/> <span style="float: right;">+</span>
Allowed Clients	<input type="text" value="MAC / IP Address"/> <span style="float: right;">+</span>
Splash Page	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Built-in <input type="radio"/> External, URL: <input type="text" value="http://"/>
Popup Handling	<input type="checkbox"/> Bypass Popup (Redirection only takes place on normal browser) <input type="checkbox"/> Automatically show splash page on Safari for Apple (iOS / macOS) devices
Logout Hostname	<input type="text" value="(Not configured)"/>

Click [here](#) to preview / customize built-in splash page

Captive Portal Settings	
<b>Enable</b>	Check <b>Enable</b> and then, optionally, select the LANs/VLANs that will use the captive portal.
<b>Hostname</b>	To customize the portal's form submission and redirection URL, enter a new URL in this field. To reset the URL to factory settings, click <b>Default</b> .
<b>Access Mode</b>	Click <b>Open Access</b> to allow clients to freely access your router. Click <b>User Authentication</b> to force your clients to authenticate before accessing your router. Select <b>External Server</b> to use the Captive Portal with a HotSpot system. As described in the following knowledgebase article: <a href="https://forum.peplink.com/t/using-hotspotsystem-wi-fi-on-pepwave-max-routers/">https://forum.peplink.com/t/using-hotspotsystem-wi-fi-on-pepwave-max-routers/</a>

### RADIUS Server

This authenticates your clients through a RADIUS server. After selecting this option, you will see the following fields:

Authentication	RADIUS Server ▾		
Auth Server	<input type="text"/>	Port 1812	Default
Auth Server Secret	<input type="text"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Hide Characters	
CoA-DM	<input type="checkbox"/>		
Accounting Server	<input type="text"/>	Port 1813	Default
Accounting Server Secret	<input type="text"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Hide Characters	
Accounting Interim Interval	<input type="text"/>	seconds	

Fill in the necessary information to complete your connection to the server and enable authentication.

### LDAP Server

This authenticates your clients through a LDAP server. Upon selecting this option, you will see the following fields:

Authentication	LDAP Server ▾		
LDAP Server	<input type="text"/>	Port 389	Default
	<input type="checkbox"/> Use DN/Password to bind to LDAP Server		
Base DN	<input type="text"/>		
Base Filter	<input type="text"/>		

Fill in the necessary information to complete your connection to the server and enable authentication.

### Access Quota

Set a time and data cap to each user's Internet usage.



### Quota Reset Time

This menu determines how your usage quota resets. Setting it to **Daily** will reset it at a specified time every day. Setting a number of **minutes after quota reached** establish a timer for each user that begins after the quota has been reached.



### Inactive Timeout

Clients will get disconnected when the inactive the configured time is reached. Default 0: no timeout

### Allowed Networks


To whitelist a network, enter the domain name / IP address here and click . To delete an existing network from the list of allowed networks, click the  button next to the listing.

### Allowed Clients

To whitelist a client, enter the MAC address / IP address here and click . To delete an existing client from the list of allowed clients, click the  button next to the listing.

<b>Splash Page</b>	Here, you can choose between using the Balance's built-in captive portal and redirecting clients to a URL you define.
<b>Popup Handling</b>	Configurable options for popup handling: - Bypass Popup (Redirection only takes place on normal browser) - Automatically show splash page on Safari for Apple (iOS / macOS) devices
<b>Logout Hostname</b>	A hostname that can be used to logout captive portal when being accessed on browser.
<b>Customize splash page</b>	Click on the provided link in the Captive portal profile to customize the splash page. A new browser tab is opened with a WYSIWYG editor of the splash page o edit the content, click on the corresponding element after switching Edit Mode to ON.

Captive Portal



Use default Logo Image  
 Choose File No file chosen

NOTE: Size max 512KB. Supported images types: JPEG, PNG and GIF.

**EMPTY STRING**

I have read and agree to the [terms and conditions](#) ?

**You must accept the terms and conditions before you can proceed**

Agree

Powered by Peplink.

Portal Configuration

Show Quota Status	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Custom Landing Page	<input type="checkbox"/>

Page: Login ▼

Login

TNC

Success

Quota reached

Edit mode ON ?

Save




## 13.10 QoS

### 13.10.1 User Groups

LAN and PPTP clients can be categorized into three user groups - **Manager, Staff, and Guest**. This menu allows you to define rules and assign client IP addresses or subnets to a user group. You can apply different bandwidth and traffic prioritization policies on each user group in the **Bandwidth Control** and **Application** sections.

The table is automatically sorted, and the table order signifies the rules' precedence. The smaller and more specific subnets are put towards the top of the table and have higher precedence; larger and less specific subnets are placed towards the bottom.

Click the **Add** button to define clients and their user group. Click the  button to remove the defined rule.

Two default rules are predefined and put at the bottom. They are **All DHCP reservation clients** and **Everyone**, and they cannot be removed. The **All DHCP reservation client** represents the LAN clients defined in the DHCP Reservation table on the LAN settings page. **Everyone** represents all clients that are not defined in any rule above. Click on a rule to change its group.

**Add / Edit User Group**
✕

Client			
Grouped by	<input style="font-size: 1em; vertical-align: middle;" type="button" value="?"/>	IP Address ▾ <input style="width: 150px;" type="text"/>	
Group	<input style="font-size: 1em; vertical-align: middle;" type="button" value="?"/>	Manager ▾	

Add / Edit User Group	
<b>Subnet / IP Address</b>	From the drop-down menu, choose whether you are going to define the client(s) by an <b>IP Address</b> or a <b>Subnet</b> . If <b>IP Address</b> is selected, enter a name defined in DHCP reservation table or a LAN client's IP address. If <b>Subnet</b> is selected, enter a subnet address and specify its subnet mask.
<b>Group</b>	This field is to define which <b>User Group</b> the specified subnet / IP address belongs to.

Once users have been assigned to a user group, their internet traffic will be restricted by rules defined for that particular group. Please refer to the following two sections for details.

### 13.10.2 Bandwidth Control

This section is to define how much minimum bandwidth will be reserved to each user group when a WAN connection is **in full load**. When this feature is enabled, a slider with two indicators will be shown. You can

move the indicators to adjust each group's weighting. The lower part of the table shows the corresponding reserved download and uploads bandwidth value of each connection.

By default, **50%** of bandwidth has been reserved for Manager, **30%** for Staff, and **20%** for Guest.

Group Bandwidth Reservation			
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
	 <b>Manager</b>	 <b>Staff</b>	 <b>Guest</b>
<b>Bandwidth %</b>	<b>50%</b>	<b>30%</b>	<b>20%</b>
WAN 1	500.0M/500.0M	300.0M/300.0M	200.0M/200.0M

You can define a maximum download speed (over all WAN connections) and upload speed (for each WAN connection) that each individual Staff and Guest member can consume. No limit can be imposed on individual Managers. By default, download and upload bandwidth limits are set to unlimited (set as **0**).

Individual Bandwidth Limit			
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
User Bandwidth Limit	Download	Upload	
	Manager: Unlimited	Unlimited	
	Staff: <input type="text" value="0"/> Mbps	<input type="text" value="0"/> Mbps	(0: unlimited)
	Guest: <input type="text" value="0"/> Mbps	<input type="text" value="0"/> Mbps	(0: unlimited)

### 13.10.3 Application

You can choose whether to apply the same prioritization settings to all user groups or customize the settings for each group.


Application Prioritization	
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Apply same settings to all users
<input type="radio"/>	Customize

Three priority levels can be set for application prioritization: **↑High**, **– Normal**, and **↓Low**. The Peplink Balance can detect various application traffic types by inspecting the packet content. Select an application by choosing a supported application, or by defining a custom application manually. The priority preference of supported applications is placed at the top of the table. Custom applications are at the bottom.

Application	Priority			?
	Manager	Staff	Guest	
All Supported Streaming Applications	↑ High	— Normal	↑ High	✖
All Email Protocols	↑ High	↑ High	↑ High	✖
MySQL	↑ High	— Normal	↓ Low	✖
SIP	↑ High	↓ Low	↓ Low	✖

**Add**

## Prioritization for Custom Application

Click the **Add** button to define a custom application. Click the button  in the **Action** column to delete the custom application in the corresponding row.

When **Supported Applications** is selected, the Peplink Balance will inspect network traffic and prioritize the selected applications. Alternatively, you can select **Custom Applications** and define the application by providing the protocol, scope, port number, and DSCP value.

**Add / Edit Application** ✖

Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Supported Applications <input type="radio"/> Custom Applications
Category	Miscellaneous
Application	All Supported Miscellaneous Protocols ▼ All Supported Miscellaneous Protocols HTTP NTP SNMP STUN USENET

**Category** and **Application** availability will be different across different Peplink Balance models.

## DSL/Cable Optimization

DSL/cable-based WAN connections have lower upload bandwidth and higher download bandwidth.

When a DSL/cable circuit's uplink is congested, the download bandwidth will be affected. Users will not be able to download data at full speed until the uplink becomes less congested. **DSL/Cable Optimization** can relieve such an issue. When it is enabled, the download speed will become less affected by the upload traffic. By default, this feature is enabled.

**DSL/Cable Optimization** ?

Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
--------	-------------------------------------

## 13.11 Firewall

A firewall is a mechanism that selectively filters data traffic between the WAN side (the Internet) and the

LAN side of the network. It can protect the local network from potential hacker attacks, access to offensive websites, and/or other inappropriate uses.

The firewall functionality of Peplink Balance supports the selective filtering of data traffic in both directions:

- Outbound (LAN to WAN)
- Inbound (WAN to LAN)
- Internal Network (VLAN to VLAN)

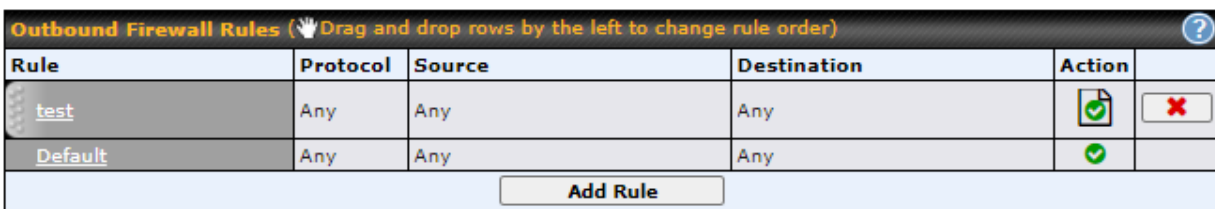
The firewall also supports the following functionality:




- Intrusion detection and DoS prevention
- Web blocking

With SpeedFusion™ enabled, the firewall rules also apply to VPN tunneled traffic. The Firewall function can be found at **Network>Firewall**

### 13.11.1 Access Rules

The outbound firewall settings are located at **Network>Firewall>Access Rules**.



Outbound Firewall Rules <small>Drag and drop rows by the left to change rule order</small>					
Rule	Protocol	Source	Destination	Action	
test	Any	Any	Any		
Default	Any	Any	Any		

**Add Rule**

Click **Add Rule** to display the following screen:

**Add a New Outbound Firewall Rule** ✕

---

**New Firewall Rule**

Rule Name	<input type="text"/>
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Always on ▾
Protocol	Any ▾ ◀ :: Protocol Selection Tool :: ▾
Source IP & Port	Any Address ▾
Destination IP & Port	Any Address ▾
Action	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Allow <input type="radio"/> Deny
Event Logging	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable

The inbound firewall settings are located at **Network>Firewall>Access Rules**.

**Inbound Firewall Rules** ( Drag and drop rows by the left to change rule order ) ?

Rule	Protocol	WAN	Source	Destination	Action	
test	Any	Any	Any	Any		
Default	Any	Any	Any	Any		

Click **Add Rule** to display the following window:

**Add a New Inbound Firewall Rule** ✕

---

**New Firewall Rule**

Rule Name	<input type="text"/>
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Always on ▾
WAN Connection	Any ▾
Protocol	Any ▾ ◀ :: Protocol Selection Tool :: ▾
Source IP & Port	Any Address ▾
Destination IP & Port	Any Address ▾
Action	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Allow <input type="radio"/> Deny
Event Logging	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable

The Internal Network firewall settings are located at **Network>Firewall>Access Rules**.

Internal Network Firewall Rules ( Drag and drop rows by the left to change rule order)					
Rule	Protocol	Source	Destination	Action	
test	Any	Any	Any		
Default	Any	Any	Any		

**Add Rule**

Click **Add Rule** to display the following window:

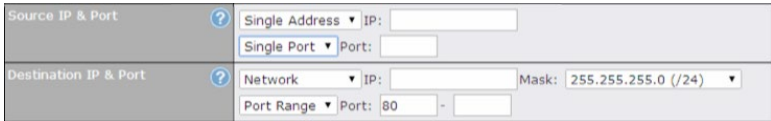
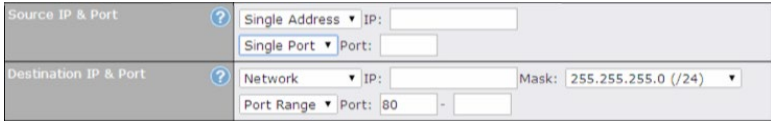
**Add a New Internal Network Firewall Rule** ✕

---

**New Firewall Rule**

Rule Name	<input type="text"/>
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Always on ▾
Protocol	<span>?</span> Any ▾ ← :: Protocol Selection :: ▾
Source	<span>?</span> Any Address ▾
Destination	<span>?</span> Any Address ▾
Action	<span>?</span> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Allow <input type="radio"/> Deny
Event Logging	<span>?</span> <input type="checkbox"/> Enable

Inbound / Outbound / Internal Network Firewall Settings	
<b>Rule Name</b>	This setting specifies a name for the firewall rule.
<b>Enable</b>	<p>This setting specifies whether the firewall rule should take effect. If the box is checked, the firewall rule takes effect. If the traffic matches the specified protocol/IP/port, actions will be taken by Peplink Balance based on the other parameters of the rule.</p> <p>If the box is not checked, the firewall rule does not take effect. The Peplink Balance will disregard the other parameters of the rule.</p> <p>Click the dropdown menu next to the checkbox to place this firewall rule on a time schedule.</p>
<b>WAN Connection (Inbound)</b>	Select the WAN connection that this firewall rule should apply to.

<p><b>Protocol</b></p>	<p>This setting specifies the protocol to be matched. Via a drop-down menu, the following protocols can be specified:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>TCP</b></li> <li>• <b>UDP</b></li> <li>• <b>ICMP</b></li> <li>• <b>IP</b></li> </ul> <p>Alternatively, the <b>Protocol Selection Tool</b> drop-down menu can be used to automatically fill in the protocol and port number of common Internet services (e.g., HTTP, HTTPS, etc.) After selecting an item from the <b>Protocol Selection Tool</b> drop-down menu, the protocol and port number remains manually modifiable.</p>
<p><b>Source IP &amp; Port</b></p>	<p>This specifies the source IP address(es) and port number(s) to be matched for the firewall rule. A single address, or a network, can be specified as the <b>Source IP &amp; Port</b> setting, as indicated with the following screenshots:</p>  <p>In addition, a single port, or a range of ports, can be specified for the <b>Source IP &amp; Port</b> settings.</p>
<p><b>Destination IP &amp; Port</b></p>	<p>This specifies the destination IP address(es) and port number(s) to be matched for the firewall rule. A single address, or a network, can be specified as the <b>Destination IP &amp; Port</b> setting, as indicated with the following screenshots:</p>  <p>In addition, a single port, or a range of ports, can be specified for the <b>Destination IP &amp; Port</b> settings.</p>
<p><b>Action</b></p>	<p>This setting specifies the action to be taken by the router upon encountering traffic that matches the both of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Source IP &amp; port</li> <li>• Destination IP &amp; port</li> </ul> <p>With the value of <b>Allow</b> for the <b>Action</b> setting, the matching traffic passes through the router (to be routed to the destination). If the value of the <b>Action</b> setting is set to <b>Deny</b>, the matching traffic does not pass through the router (and is discarded).</p>
<p><b>Event Logging</b></p>	<p>This setting specifies whether or not to log matched firewall events. The logged messages are shown on the page <b>Status&gt;Event Log</b>. A sample message is as follows:</p> <pre>Aug 13 23:47:44 Denied CONN=Ethernet WAN SRC=20.3.2.1 DST=192.168.1.20 LEN=48 PROTO=TCP SPT=2260 DPT=80</pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>CONN</b>: The connection where the log entry refers to</li> </ul>

- **SRC:** Source IP address
- **DST:** Destination IP address
- **LEN:** Packet length
- **PROTO:** Protocol
- **SPT:** Source port
- **DPT:** Destination port

Click **Save** to store your changes. To create an additional firewall rule, click **Add Rule** and repeat the above steps.

To change a rule's priority, simply drag and drop the rule:

- Hold the left mouse button on the rule.
- Move it to the desired position.
- Drop it by releasing the mouse button.

Rule	Protocol	Source IP Port	Destination IP Port	Policy	
No web access	TCP	Any Any	Any 80	Deny	
No FTP access		Any Any	Any 21	Deny	
Default	Any	Any	Any	Allow	

**Add Rule**

To remove a rule, click the button.

Rules are matched from top to the bottom. If a connection matches any one of the upper rules, the matching process will stop. If none of the rules match the connection, the **Default** rule will be applied.

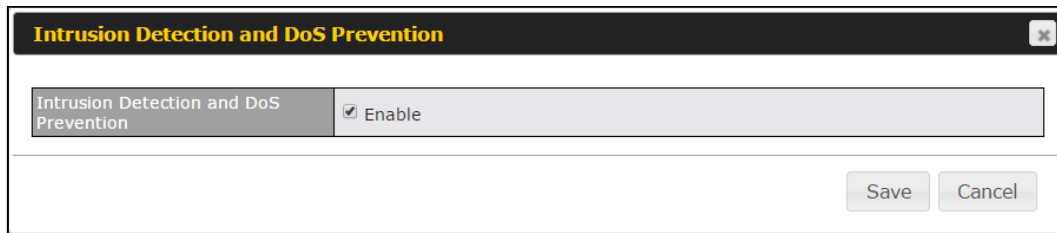
The **Default** rule is **Allow** for Outbound, Inbound and Internal Network access.

### Tip


If the default inbound rule is set to **Allow** for NAT-enabled WANs, no inbound Allow firewall rules will be required for inbound port forwarding and inbound NAT mapping rules. However, if the default inbound rule is set as **Deny**, a corresponding Allow firewall rule will be required.



## Intrusion Detection and DoS Prevention



The screenshot shows a configuration window titled "Intrusion Detection and DoS Prevention". The window has a dark header bar with the title and a close button. Below the header, there is a light gray area with a label "Intrusion Detection and DoS Prevention" and a checked checkbox labeled "Enable". At the bottom right of the window, there are two buttons: "Save" and "Cancel".

The Balance can detect and prevent intrusions and denial-of-service (DoS) attacks from the Internet. To turn on this feature, click , check the **Enable** check box for the **Intrusion Detection and DoS Prevention**, and press the **Save** button.

When this feature is enabled, the Balance will detect and prevent the following kinds of intrusions and denial-of-service attacks.

- Port scan
  - NMAP FIN/URG/PSH
  - Xmas tree
  - Another Xmas tree
  - Null scan
  - SYN/RST
  - SYN/FIN
- SYN flood prevention
- Ping flood attack prevention

### 13.11.2 Content Blocking

**Application Blocking** ?

Please Select Application... +

**Web Blocking** ?

Preset Category  
 High  
 Moderate  
 Low  
 Custom

<input type="checkbox"/> Adware	<input type="checkbox"/> Aggressive	<input type="checkbox"/> Audio-Video
<input type="checkbox"/> Dating	<input type="checkbox"/> Drugs	<input type="checkbox"/> File Hosting
<input type="checkbox"/> P2P/File sharing	<input type="checkbox"/> Gambling	<input type="checkbox"/> Games
<input type="checkbox"/> Malware	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pornography	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Proxy/Anonymizer
<input type="checkbox"/> Social Networking	<input type="checkbox"/> Contraband	<input type="checkbox"/> Update Sites
<input type="checkbox"/> Violence	<input type="checkbox"/> Weapons	

Content Filtering Database Auto Update ?

Customized Domains ?  
 +

Exempted Domains from Web Blocking ?  
 +

**Exempted User Groups** ?

Manager	<input type="checkbox"/> Exempt
Staff	<input type="checkbox"/> Exempt
Guest	<input type="checkbox"/> Exempt

**Exempted Subnets** ?

Network	Subnet Mask	
<input style="width: 95%;" type="text"/>	255.255.255.0 (/24)	+

**URL Logging**

Enable	<input type="checkbox"/>
Log Server Host	<input style="width: 60%;" type="text"/> Port: 514

#### Application Blocking

Choose applications to be blocked from LAN/PPTP/PepVPN peer clients' access, except for those on the Exempted User Groups or Exempted Subnets defined below.

#### Web Blocking

Defines website domain names to be blocked from LAN/PPTP/PepVPN peer clients' access except for

those on the Exempted User Groups or Exempted Subnets defined below.

If "foobar.com" is entered, any web site with a host name ending in foobar.com will be blocked, e.g. www.foobar.com, foobar.com, etc. However, "myfoobar.com" will not be blocked.

You may enter the wild card ".\*" at the end of a domain name to block any web site with a host name having the domain name in the middle. If you enter "foobar.\*", then "www.foobar.com", "www.foobar.co.jp", or "foobar.co.uk" will be blocked. Placing the wild card in any other position is not supported.

The device will inspect and look for blocked domain names on all HTTP and HTTPS traffic.

## Customized Domains

Enter an appropriate website address, and the Peplink Balance will block and disallow LAN/PPTP/SpeedFusion™ peer clients to access these websites. Exceptions can be added using the instructions in **Sections 21.2.1.4** and **21.2.1.5**.

You may enter the wild card ".\*" at the end of a domain name to block any web site with a host name having the domain name in the middle. For example, If you enter "foobar.\*," then "www.foobar.com," "www.foobar.co.jp," or "foobar.co.uk" will be blocked. Placing the wild card in any other position is not supported.

The Peplink Balance will inspect and look for blocked domain names on all HTTP traffic. Secure web (HTTPS) traffic is not supported.

## Exempted User Groups

Check and select pre-defined user group(s) who can be exempted from the access blocking rules. User groups can be defined at **QoS>User Groups** section. Please refer to **Section 20.1** for details.

## Exempted Subnets

With the subnet defined in the field, clients on the particular subnet(s) can be exempted from the access blocking rules.

## URL Logging

Click **enable**, and then enter the ip address and port (if applicable) where your remote syslog server is located.

## 13.12 OSPF & RIPv2

The Peplink Balance supports OSPF and RIPv2 dynamic routing protocols. Click the **Network** tab from the top bar, and then click the **Routing Protocols > OSPF & RIPv2** item on the sidebar to reach the following menu:

OSPF							
Router ID	LAN IP Address						
Area	Interfaces						
0.0.0.0	Untagged LAN (192.168.112.1/24), WAN 4 (192.168.254.10/24)						
<b>Add</b>							
RIPv2							
No RIPv2 Defined.							
OSPF & RIPv2 Route Advertisement							
PepVPN Route Isolation	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable						
Network Advertising	---	All LAN/VLAN networks will be advertised when no network advertising is chosen.					
Static Route Advertising	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable						
	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Excluded Networks</th> <th>Subnet Mask</th> <td></td> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td></td> <td>255.255.255.0 (/24) </td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Excluded Networks	Subnet Mask			255.255.255.0 (/24)	
Excluded Networks	Subnet Mask						
	255.255.255.0 (/24)						
<b>Save</b>							

OSPF	
<b>Router ID</b>	This field determines the ID of the router. By default, this is specified as the LAN IP address. If you want to specify your own ID, enter it in the <b>Custom</b> field.
<b>Area</b>	This is an overview of the OSPFv2 areas you have defined. Click on the area name to configure it. To set a new area, click <b>Add</b> . To delete an existing area, click  .

**OSPF settings**
✕

Area ID	<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>
Link Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Broadcast <input type="radio"/> Point-to-Point
Authentication	None ▾
Interfaces	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Untagged LAN (192.168.112.1/24) <input type="checkbox"/> Management VLAN (10.0.2.1/24) <input type="checkbox"/> jamestest (10.22.37.1/24) <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 1 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN 4 (192.168.254.10/24) <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 5

OSPF Settings	
<b>Area ID</b>	Determine the name of your <b>Area ID</b> to apply to this group. Machines linked to this group will send and receive related OSPF packets, while unlinked machines will ignore it.
<b>Link Type</b>	Choose the network type that this area will use.
<b>Authentication</b>	Choose an authentication method, if one is used, from this drop-down menu. Available options are <b>MD5</b> and <b>Text</b> . Enter the authentication key next to the drop-down menu.
<b>Interfaces</b>	Determine which interfaces this area will use to listen to and deliver OSPF packets

To access RIPv2 settings, click .

**RIPv2 settings** ✕

Authentication	None ▼
Interfaces	<input type="checkbox"/> Untagged LAN (192.168.112.1/24) <input type="checkbox"/> Management VLAN (10.0.2.1/24) <input type="checkbox"/> jamestest (10.22.37.1/24) <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 1 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4 (192.168.254.10/24) <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 5

RIPv2 Settings	
<b>Authentication</b>	Choose an authentication method, if one is used, from this drop-down menu. Available options are <b>MD5</b> and <b>Text</b> . Enter the authentication key next to the drop-down menu.
<b>Interfaces</b>	Determine which interfaces this group will use to listen to and deliver RIPv2 packets.

**OSPF & RIPv2 Route Advertisement**

PepVPN Route Isolation	? <input type="checkbox"/> Enable						
Network Advertising	? --- <span style="float: right;">+</span> <small>All LAN/VLAN networks will be advertised when no network advertising is chosen.</small>						
Static Route Advertising	? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable						
	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 60%;">Excluded Networks</th> <th style="width: 30%;">Subnet Mask</th> <th style="width: 10%;"></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td style="height: 20px;"></td> <td>255.255.255.0 (/24) ▼</td> <td style="text-align: center;">+</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Excluded Networks	Subnet Mask			255.255.255.0 (/24) ▼	+
Excluded Networks	Subnet Mask						
	255.255.255.0 (/24) ▼	+					

OSPF & RIPv2 Route Advertisement	
<b>PepVPN Route Isolation</b>	Isolate PepVPN peers from each other. Received PepVPN routes will not be forwarded to other PepVPN peers to reduce bandwidth consumption..
<b>Network Advertising</b>	Networks to be advertised over OSPF & RIPv2. If no network is selected, all LAN / VLAN networks will be advertised by default.
<b>Static Route Advertising</b>	Enable this option to advertise LAN static routes over OSPF & RIPv2. Static routes that match the Excluded Networks table will not be advertised.

## 13.13 BGP

Click the Network tab from the top bar, and then click the **BGP** item on the sidebar to configure BGP.

BGP	AS	Neighbors	
Uplink	64520	172.16.51.1	
<input type="button" value="Add"/>			

Click "x" to delete a BGP profile

Click "Add" to add a new BGP profile

BGP Profile						
Profile Name	<input type="text"/>					
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>					
Interface	WAN 1 ▾					
Router ID	<input type="radio"/> LAN IP Address <input type="radio"/> Custom: <input type="text"/>					
Autonomous System	<input type="text"/>					
Neighbor	IP Address	Autonomous System	Multihop / TTL	Password	AS-Path Prepending	<input type="button" value="+"/>
	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	disable	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	
Hold Time	240 <input type="text"/>					

BGP	
<b>Name</b>	This field is for specifying a name to represent this profile.
<b>Enable</b>	When this box is checked, this BGP profile will be enabled. Otherwise, it will be disabled.
<b>Interface</b>	The interface where BGP neighbor is located
<b>Autonomous System</b>	The Autonomous System Number (ASN) of this profile
<b>Neighbor</b>	BGP Neighbor's details
<b>IP address</b>	Neighbor's IP address
<b>Autonomous System</b>	Neighbor's ASN

<b>Multihop/TTL</b>	Time-to-live (TTL) of BGP packet. Leave it blank if BGP neighbor is directly connected, otherwise you must specify a TTL value. Accurately, this option should be used if the configured neighbor IP address does not match the selected Interface's network subnets. TTL value must be between 2 to 255.
<b>Password</b>	Optional password for MD5 authentication of BGP sessions.
<b>AS-Path Prepending:</b>	AS path to be prepended to the routes received from this neighbor. The value must be a comma separated ASN. For example "64530,64531" will prepend "64530, 64531" to received routes.
<b>Hold Time</b>	Time in seconds to wait for a keepalive message from the neighbor before considering the BGP connection is staled. This value must be either 0 (infinite hold time) or between 3 and 65535 inclusively.

Route Advertisement			
Network Advertising	<input type="text" value="---"/>	<input type="button" value="+"/>	
Static Route Advertising	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable		
	Excluded Networks	Subnet Mask	<input type="button" value="+"/>
	<input type="text"/>	255.255.255.0 (/24)	
Advertise OSPF Route	<input type="checkbox"/>		

<b>Network Advertising</b>	Networks to be advertised to BGP neighbor.
<b>Static Route Advertising</b>	Enable this option to advertise LAN static routes. Static routes that match the Excluded Networks table will not be advertised.
<b>Advertise OSPF Route</b>	When this box is checked, all learnt OSPF routes will be advertised.

Route Import			
Filter Mode	<input type="text" value="Accept"/>		
Restricted Networks	Network	Subnet Mask	Exact Match
	<input type="text"/>	255.255.255.0 (/24)	<input type="checkbox"/>
			<input type="button" value="+"/>

<b>Filter Mode</b>	This option selects the route import filter mode. <b>None:</b> all BGP routes will be accepted. <b>Accept:</b> Routes in "Restricted Networks" will be accepted, routes not in the list will be rejected. <b>Reject:</b> Routes in "Restricted Networks" will be rejected, routes not in the list will be accepted.
--------------------	--



**Restricted Networks** This specifies the network in the “route import” entry  
**Exact Match:** When this box is checked, only routes with the same Networks and Subnet Mask will be filtered. Otherwise, routes within the Networks and Subnet will be filtered.

Route Export	
Export to other BGP Profile	<input type="checkbox"/>
Export to OSPF	<input type="checkbox"/>

**Export to other BGP Profile** When this box is checked, routes learnt from this BGP profile will export to other BGP profiles.


**Export to OSPF** When this box is checked, routes learnt from this BGP profile will export to the OSPF routing protocol.

### 13.14 Remote User Access

A remote-access VPN connection allows an individual user to connect to a private business network from a remote location using a laptop or desktop computer connected to the Internet. Networks routed by a Peplink router can be remotely accessed via OpenVPN, L2TP with IPsec or PPTP. To configure this feature, navigate to **Network > Remote User Access** and choose the required VPN type.

#### 13.14.1 L2TP with IPsec

Remote User Access Settings	
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
VPN Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> L2TP with IPsec <input type="radio"/> PPTP <input type="radio"/> OpenVPN
Preshared Key	<input type="text"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Hide Characters

L2TP with IPsec Remote User Access Settings	
<b>Pre-shared Key</b>	Enter your pre shared key in the text field. Please note that remote devices will need this preshared key to access the Balance.
<b>Listen On</b>	This setting is for specifying the WAN IP addresses that allow remote user access.
<b>Disable Weak Ciphers</b>	Click the  button to show and enable this option. When checked, weak ciphers such as 3DES will be disabled.

Continue to configure the authentication method.

### 13.14.2 OpenVPN

Remote User Access Settings	
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
VPN Type	<input type="radio"/> L2TP with IPsec <input type="radio"/> PPTP <input checked="" type="radio"/> OpenVPN You can obtain the OpenVPN client profile from the <a href="#">status page</a> .

Select OpenVPN and continue to configure the authentication method.

The OpenVPN Client profile can be downloaded from the **Status > device** page after the configuration has been saved.

OpenVPN Client Profile	 <a href="#">Route all traffic</a>   <a href="#">Split tunnel</a>
------------------------	--

You have a choice between 2 different OpenVPN Client profiles:

**Option 1: "Route all traffic" profile**  
Using this profile, VPN clients will send all the traffic through the OpenVPN tunnel

**Option 2: "Split tunnel" profile**  
Using this profile, VPN clients will ONLY send those traffic designated to the untagged LAN and VLAN segment through the OpenVPN tunnel.

### 13.14.3 PPTP

Remote User Access Settings	
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
VPN Type	<input type="radio"/> L2TP with IPsec <input checked="" type="radio"/> PPTP <input type="radio"/> OpenVPN

No additional configuration required.

The Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol (PPTP) is an obsolete method for implementing virtual private networks. PPTP has many well known security issues

Continue to configure authentication methods.

### 13.14.4 Authentication Methods

Connect to Network	<span>?</span> Untagged LAN ▾						
Authentication	Local User Accounts ▾						
User Accounts	<table border="1"> <tr> <td><span>?</span> Username</td> <td>Password</td> <td><span>+</span></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input type="password"/></td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	<span>?</span> Username	Password	<span>+</span>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="password"/>	
<span>?</span> Username	Password	<span>+</span>					
<input type="text"/>	<input type="password"/>						

Authentication Method	
<b>Connect to Network</b>	Select the VLAN network for remote users to enable remote user access on.
<b>Authentication</b>	Determine the method of authenticating remote users

#### User accounts:

This setting allows you to define the Remote User Accounts. Click Add to input username and password to create an account. After adding the user accounts, you can click on a username to edit the account password.

#### Note:

The username must contain lowercase letters, numerics, underscore(\_), dash(-), at sign(@), and period(.) only.

The password must be between 8 and 12 characters long.

#### LDAP Server:

Connect to Network	<span>?</span> Untagged LAN ▾
Authentication	LDAP Server ▾
LDAP Server	<input type="text"/> Port <input type="text" value="389"/> <span>Default</span> <input type="checkbox"/> Use DN/Password to bind to LDAP Server
Base DN	<input type="text"/>
Base Filter	<input type="text"/>

Enter the matching LDAP server details to allow for LDAP server authentication.

#### Radius Server:

Authentication	RADIUS Server ▾		
Auth Protocol	MS-CHAP v2 ▾		
Auth Server	<input type="text"/>	Port 1812	Default
Auth Server Secret	<input type="text"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Hide Characters	
Accounting Server	<input type="text"/>	Port 1813	Default
Accounting Server Secret	<input type="text"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Hide Characters	

Enter the matching Radius server details to allow for Radius server authentication.

### Active Directory:

Connect to Network	<input type="text" value="Untagged LAN"/> ▾
Authentication	Active Directory ▾
Server Hostname	<input type="text"/>
Domain	<input type="text"/>
Admin Username	<input type="text"/>
Admin Password	<input type="text"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Hide Characters

Enter the matching Active Directory details to allow for Active Directory server authentication.

## 13.15 Misc. Settings

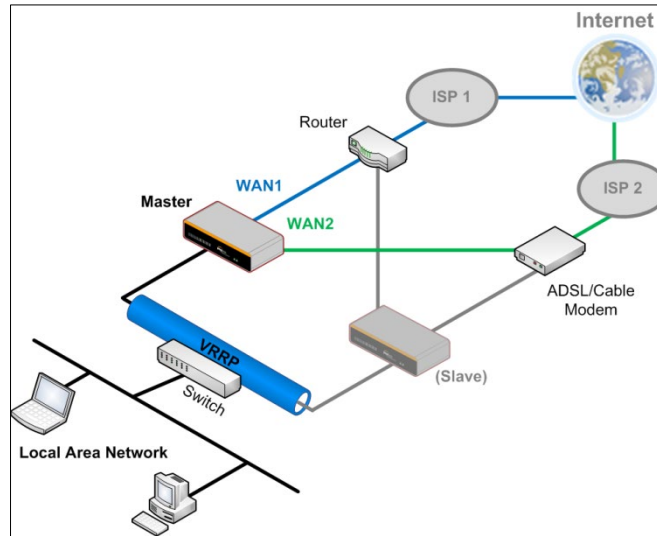
### 13.15.1 High Availability

Peplink Balance supports high availability (HA) configurations via an open standard virtual router redundancy protocol (VRRP, RFC 3768).

In an HA configuration, two same-model Peplink Balance units provide redundancy and failover in a master-slave arrangement. In the event that the master unit is down, the slave unit becomes active.

High availability will be disabled automatically where there is a drop-in connection configured on a LAN bypass port.

The following diagram illustrates an HA configuration with two Peplink Balance units and two Internet connections:



In the diagram, the WAN ports of each Peplink Balance unit connect to the router and to the modem. Both Peplink Balance units connect to the same LAN switch via a LAN port.

An elaboration on the technical details of the implementation of virtual router redundancy protocol (VRRP, RFC 3768) by the Balance follows:

- In an HA configuration, the two Peplink Balance units communicate with each other using VRRP over the LAN.
- The two Peplink Balance units broadcast heartbeat signals to the LAN at a frequency of one heartbeat signal per second.
- In the event that no heartbeat signal from the master Peplink Balance unit is received in 3 seconds (or longer) since the last heartbeat signal, the slave Peplink Balance unit becomes active.
- The slave Peplink Balance unit initiates the WAN connections and binds to a previously configured LAN IP address.
- At a subsequent point when the master Peplink Balance unit recovers, it will once again become active.

You can configure high availability at **Network>Misc. Settings>High Availability**.

Interface for Master Router

High Availability	
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Group Number	5
Preferred Role	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Master <input type="radio"/> Slave
Resume Master Role Upon Recovery	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Virtual IP	
LAN Administration IP	192.168.1.1
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0

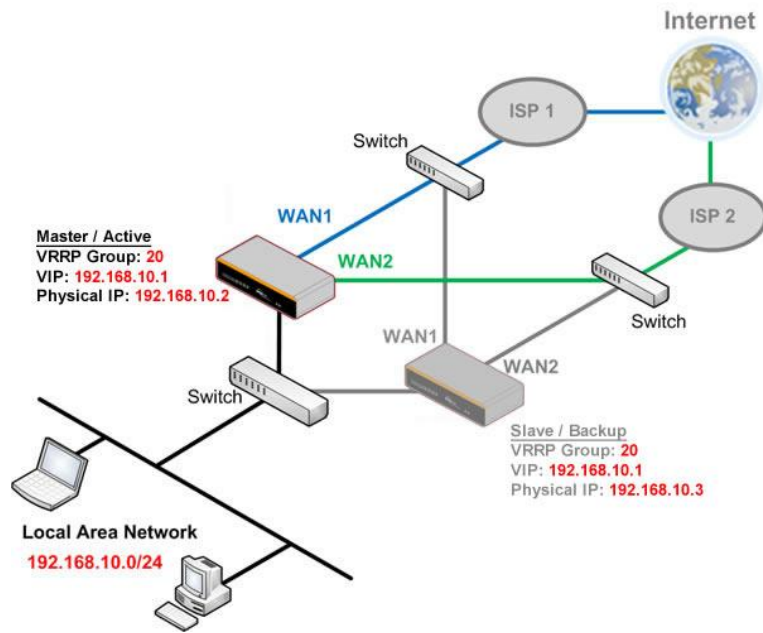
Interface for Slave Router

High Availability	
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Group Number	5
Preferred Role	<input type="radio"/> Master <input checked="" type="radio"/> Slave
Configuration Sync.	<input type="checkbox"/> Master Serial Number: 5454- 5454 -5454
Virtual IP	
LAN Administration IP	192.168.1.1
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0

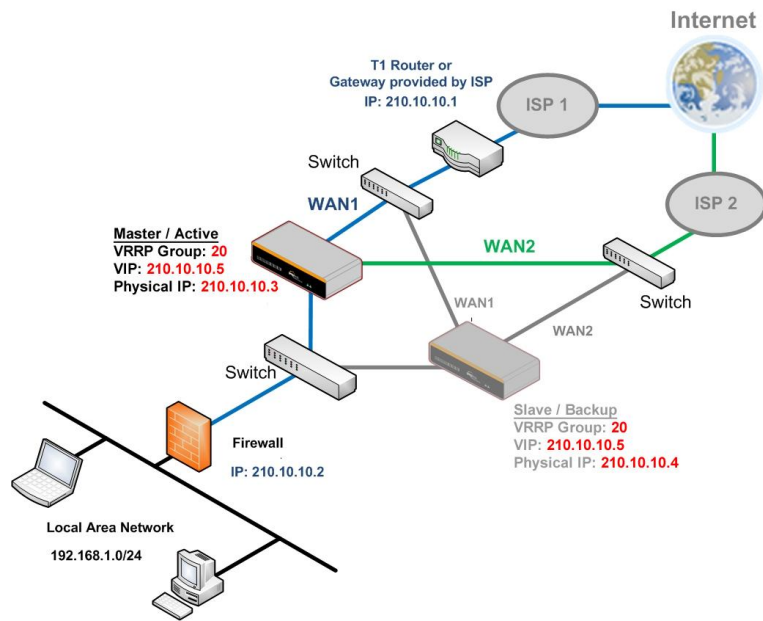
High Availability	
<b>Enable</b>	Checking this box specifies that the Peplink Balance unit is part of a high availability configuration.
<b>Group Number</b>	This number identifies a pair of Peplink Balance units operating in a high availability configuration. The two Peplink Balance units in the pair must have the same <b>Group Number</b> value.
<b>Preferred Role</b>	This setting specifies whether the Peplink Balance unit operates in master or slave mode. Click the corresponding radio button to set the role of the unit. One of the units in the pair must be configured as the master, and the other unit must be configured as the slave.
<b>Resume Master Role Upon Recovery</b>	This option is displayed when <b>Master</b> mode is selected in <b>Preferred Role</b> . If this option is enabled, once the device has recovered from an outage, it will take over and resume its <b>Master</b> role from the slave unit.
<b>Configuration Sync.</b>	This option is displayed when <b>Slave</b> mode is selected in <b>Preferred Role</b> . If this option is enabled and the <b>Master Serial Number</b> entered matches with the actual master unit's, the master unit will automatically transfer the configuration to this unit. Please make sure the <b>LAN IP Address</b> and the <b>Subnet Mask</b> fields are set correctly in the LAN settings page. You can refer to the <b>Event Log</b> for the configuration synchronization status.
<b>Master Serial Number</b>	If <b>Configuration Sync.</b> is checked, the serial number of the master unit is required here for the feature to work properly.
<b>Virtual IP</b>	The HA pair must share the same <b>Virtual IP</b> . The <b>Virtual IP</b> and the <b>LAN Administration IP</b> must be under the same network.
<b>LAN Administration IP</b>	This setting specifies a LAN IP address to be used for accessing administration functionality. This address should be unique within the LAN.
<b>Subnet Mask</b>	This setting specifies the subnet mask of the LAN.

### Important Note

For Balance routers in NAT mode, the virtual IP (VIP) should be set as the default gateway for all hosts sitting on the LAN segment. For example, a firewall sitting behind the Balance should set its default gateway as the virtual IP instead of the IP of the master Balance.



In drop-in mode, no other configuration needs to be set.



Please note that the drop-in WAN cannot be configured as a LAN bypass port while it is configured for high availability.

## 13.15.2 Certificate Manager

Certificate		
VPN Certificate	No Certificate	
Web Admin SSL Certificate	Default Certificate is in use	
Captive Portal SSL Certificate	Default Certificate is in use	
MediaFast Root CA Certificate	Default Certificate is in use	
OpenVPN Root CA Certificate	Default Certificate is in use	

ContentHub Certificate
No Certificates defined
<input type="button" value="Add Certificate"/>

Wi-Fi WAN Client Certificate
No Certificates defined
<input type="button" value="Add Certificate"/>

Wi-Fi WAN CA Certificate
No Certificates defined
<input type="button" value="Add Certificate"/>

This section allows you to assign certificates for the local VPN, OpenVPN, Captive Portal, Mediafast, ContentHub, Wi-Fi WAN (Client and CA) and web admin SSL for extra security.

Read the following knowledgebase article for full instructions on how to create and import a self-signed certificate: <https://forum.peplink.com/t/how-to-create-a-self-signed-certificate-and-import-it-to-a-peplink-product/>

## 13.15.3 Service Forwarding

Service forwarding settings are located at **Network>Misc. Settings>Service Forwarding**.



<b>SMTP Forwarding Setup</b> <span style="float: right;">?</span>	
SMTP Forwarding	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable
<b>Web Proxy Forwarding Setup</b> <span style="float: right;">?</span>	
Web Proxy Forwarding	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable
<b>DNS Forwarding Setup</b> <span style="float: right;">?</span>	
Forward Outgoing DNS Requests to Local DNS Proxy	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable
<b>Custom Service Forwarding Setup</b>	
Custom Service Forwarding	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable

Service Forwarding	
<b>SMTP Forwarding</b>	When this option is enabled, all outgoing SMTP connections destined for any host at TCP port 25 will be intercepted. These connections will be redirected to a specified SMTP server and port number. SMTP server settings for each WAN can be specified after selecting <b>Enable</b> .
<b>Web Proxy Forwarding</b>	When this option is enabled, all outgoing connections destined for the proxy server specified in <b>Web Proxy Interception Settings</b> will be intercepted. These connections will be redirected to a specified web proxy server and port number. Web proxy interception settings and proxy server settings for each WAN can be specified after selecting <b>Enable</b> .
<b>DNS Forwarding</b>	When this option is enabled, all outgoing DNS lookups will be intercepted and redirected to the built-in DNS name server. If any LAN device is using the DNS name servers of a WAN connection, you may want to enable this option to enhance the DNS availability without modifying the DNS server setting of the clients. The built-in DNS name server will distribute DNS lookups to corresponding DNS servers of all available WAN connections. In this case, DNS service will not be interrupted, even if any WAN connection is down.
<b>Custom Service Forwarding</b>	When custom service forwarding is enabled, outgoing traffic with the specified TCP port will be forwarded to a local or remote server by defining its IP address and port number.

## SMTP Forwarding

Some ISPs require their users to send e-mails via the ISP's SMTP server. All outgoing SMTP connections are blocked except those connecting to the ISP's. The Peplink Balance supports the interception and redirection of all outgoing SMTP connections (destined for TCP port 25) via a WAN connection to the WAN's corresponding SMTP server.

SMTP Forwarding Setup			
SMTP Forwarding		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	
Connection	Enable Forwarding?	SMTP Server	SMTP Port
WAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>		
WAN 2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	22.2.2.2	25
WAN 3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	33.3.3.2	25
WAN 4	<input type="checkbox"/>		

To enable the feature, select **Enable** under **SMTP Forwarding Setup**. Check **Enable Forwarding** for the WAN connection(s) that needs forwarding. Under **SMTP Server**, enter the ISP's e-mail server host name or IP address. Under **SMTP Port**, enter the TCP port number for each WAN.

The Peplink Balance will intercept SMTP connections. Choose a WAN port according to the outbound policy, and then forward the connection to the SMTP server, if the chosen WAN has enabled forwarding. If the forwarding is disabled for a WAN connection, SMTP connections for the WAN will be simply be forwarded to the connection's original destination.

### Note

If you want to route all SMTP connections only to particular WAN connection(s), you should create a custom rule in outbound policy (see **Section 16.1**).

## Web Proxy Forwarding

Web Proxy Forwarding Setup			
Web Proxy Forwarding		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	
Web Proxy Interception Settings			
Proxy Server		IP Address 123.123.11.22	Port 8080
<small>(Current settings in users' browser)</small>			
Connection	Enable Forwarding?	Proxy Server IP Address : Port	
WAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>		:
WAN 2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	22.2.2.2	: 8765
WAN 3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	33.3.3.2	: 8080
WAN 4	<input type="checkbox"/>		:

When this feature is enabled, the Peplink Balance will intercept all outgoing connections destined for the proxy server specified in **Web Proxy Server Interception Settings**. Then it will choose a WAN connection according to the outbound policy and forward the connection to the specified web proxy server and port number. Redirected server settings for each WAN can be set here. If forwarding is disabled for a WAN, then web proxy connections for that WAN will simply be forwarded to the connection's original destination.

## DNS Forwarding

DNS Forwarding Setup	
Forward Outgoing DNS Requests to Local DNS Proxy	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable

When DNS forwarding is enabled, all clients' outgoing DNS requests will also be intercepted and forwarded to the built-in DNS proxy server.

## Custom Service Forwarding

Custom Service Forwarding Setup			
Custom Service Forwarding	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable		
Settings	TCP Port	Server IP Address	Server Port
	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/> +

After clicking the **enable** checkbox, enter your TCP port for traffic heading to the router, and then specify the IP Address and Port of the server you wish to forward to the service to.

### 13.15.4 Service Passthrough

Service passthrough settings can be found at **Network>Misc. Settings>Service Passthrough**.

Service Passthrough Support	
SIP	<input type="radio"/> Standard Mode <input type="radio"/> Compatibility Mode <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Define custom signal ports 1. <input type="text"/> 2. <input type="text"/> 3. <input type="text"/>
H.323	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable
FTP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Define custom control ports 1. <input type="text"/> 2. <input type="text"/> 3. <input type="text"/>
TFTP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable
IPsec NAT-T	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Define custom ports 1. <input type="text"/> 2. <input type="text"/> 3. <input type="text"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Route IPsec Site-to-Site VPN via <input type="text" value="WAN 1"/>

(Registered trademarks are copyrighted by their respective owner)

Some Internet services need to be specially handled in a multi-WAN environment. The Peplink Balance can handle these services such that Internet applications do not notice it is behind a multi-WAN router. Settings for service passthrough support are available here.

Service Passthrough Support	
<b>SIP</b>	Session initiation protocol, aka SIP, is a voice-over-IP protocol. The Peplink Balance can act as a SIP application layer gateway (ALG) which binds connections for the same SIP session to the same WAN connection and translate IP address in the SIP packets correctly in NAT mode. Such passthrough support is always enabled and there are two modes for

	<p>selection: <b>Standard Mode</b> and <b>Compatibility Mode</b>.</p> <p>If your SIP server's signal port number is non-standard, you can check the box <b>Define custom signal ports</b> and input the port numbers to the text boxes.</p>
<b>H.323</b>	<p>With this option enabled, protocols that provide audio-visual communication sessions will be defined on any packet network and passthrough the Balance.</p>
<b>FTP</b>	<p>FTP sessions consist of two TCP connections; one for control and one for data. In a multi-WAN situation, they must be routed to the same WAN connection. Otherwise, problems will arise in transferring files. By default, the Peplink Balance monitors TCP control connections on port 21 for any FTP connections and binds TCP connections of the same FTP session to the same WAN.</p> <p>If you have an FTP server listening on a port number other than 21, you can check <b>Define custom control ports</b> and enter the port numbers in the text boxes.</p>
<b>TFTP</b>	<p>The Peplink Balance monitors outgoing TFTP connections and routes any incoming TFTP data packets back to the client. Select <b>Enable</b> if you want to enable TFTP passthrough support.</p>
<b>IPsec NAT-T</b>	<p>This field is for enabling the support of IPsec NAT-T passthrough. UDP ports 500, 4500, and 10000 are monitored by default.</p> <p>You may add more custom data ports that your IPsec system uses by checking <b>Define custom ports</b>. If the VPN contains IPsec site-to-site VPN traffic, check <b>Route IPsec Site-to-Site VPN</b> and choose the WAN connection to route the traffic to.</p>

### 13.15.5 NTP Server

Peplink routers can now serve as a local NTP server. Upon start up, it is now able to provide connected devices with the accurate time, precise UTC from either an external NTP server or via GPS and ensuring that connected devices always receive the correct time.

NTP Server setting can be found via: **Network>Misc. Settings>NTP Server**

NTP Server	
Enable	<input type="checkbox"/>

Save

Time Settings can be found at **System>Time>Time Settings**

Time Settings	
Time Zone	(GMT) Casablanca <input type="checkbox"/> Show all
Time Sync	Time Server
Time Server	0.peplink.pool.ntp.org

Save

### 13.15.6 Grouped Networks

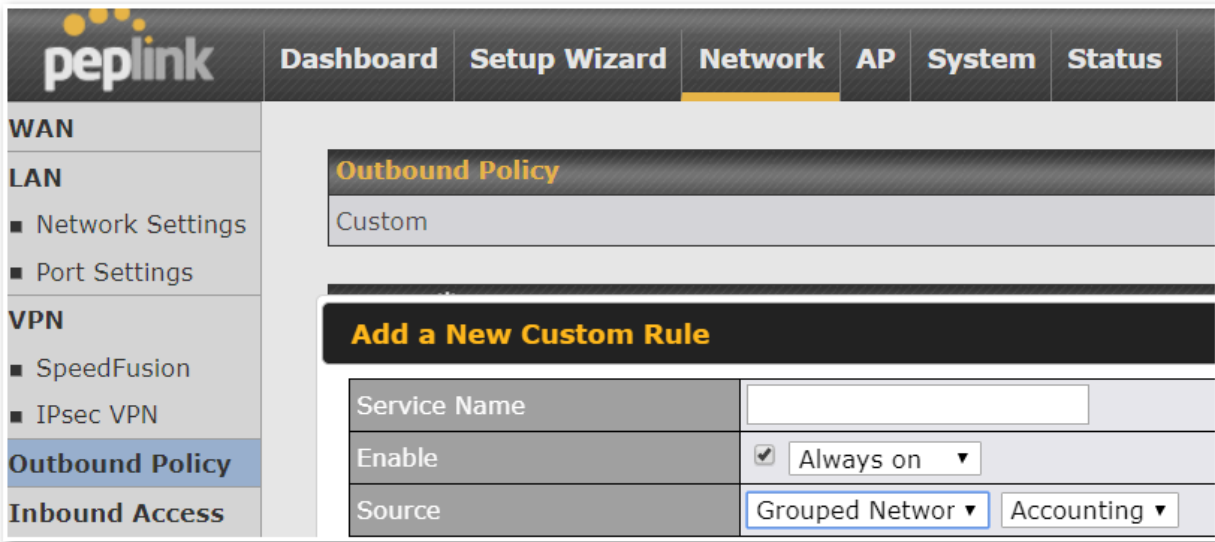
Grouped Networks	
Name	Networks
	Add Group

Using “Grouped Networks” you can group and name a range of IP addresses, which can then be used to define firewall rules or outbound policies.

Start by clicking on “add group” then fill in the appropriate field. In this example we’ll create a group “accounting” Click save when you have finished adding the required networks.

Grouped Networks			
Name	Accounting		
Networks	Network	Subnet Mask	
	192.168.50.192	255.255.255.224 (/27)	<input type="checkbox"/>
		255.255.255.255 (/32)	<input type="checkbox"/>

The grouped network “accounting” can now be used to configure a group policy or firewall rule.



### 13.15.7 SIM Toolkit

The SIM Toolkit can be found via **Networks > Misc Settings > SIM Toolkit**. This supports two functionalities, USSD and SMS.

#### USSD

Unstructured Supplementary Service Data (USSD) is a protocol used by mobile phones to communicate with their service provider's computers. One of the most common uses is to query the available balance.

SIM Status	
WAN Connection	Cellular
SIM Card	1
IMSI	856195002108538
Tool	USSD

USSD	
USSD Code	<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Submit"/>

Enter your USSD code under the **USSD Code** text field and click **Submit**.

SIM Status	
WAN Connection	Cellular
SIM Card	1
IMSI	856195002108538
USSD Code	*138# <input type="button" value="Submit"/>
Receive SMS	<input type="button" value="Get"/>

You will receive a confirmation. To check the SMS response, click **Get**.

SIM Status	
WAN Connection	Cellular
SIM Card	1
IMSI	856195002108538
USSD Code	*138# <input type="button" value="Submit"/>
USSD Status	Request is sent successfully
Receive SMS	<input type="button" value="Get"/>

After a few minutes you will receive a response to your USSD code

Received SMS		
May 27 20:02	<p><b>PCX</b>                      As of May 27th                      Account Balance: \$ 0.00                      Amount Unbilled                      Voice Calls: 0 minutes                      Video Calls: 0 minutes                      SMS (Roaming): 0                      SMS (Within Network): 0                      MMS (Roaming): 0                      MMS (Within Network): 0                      Data Usage: 7384KB                      (For reference only, please refer to bill)</p>	<input type="button" value="✘"/>
Aug 8 , 2013 14:51	<p><b>PCX</b>                      iPhone &amp; Android users need to make sure "PCX" is entered as the APN under "Settings" &gt; "Mobile network setting" for web browsing and mobile data service. Other handset models will receive handset settings via SMS shortly (PIN: 1234) (Consumer Service Hotline: 1000 / Business Customer Hotline 10088)</p>	<input type="button" value="✘"/>

## SMS

The SMS option allows you to read SMS (text) messages that have been sent to the SIM in your Peplink router.

SIM Status	
WAN Connection	Cellular
SIM Card	1
IMSI	0710211100000000
Tool	SMS

SMS		Refresh
Jun 21, 2017 18:00	Hi Thank you, your new password is: v1c10r10 - you can change this when you first login at <a href="#">thorin.as.uk</a>	✘
May 06, 2017 12:23	Hi! Hi! Your new bill is ready to view. Go to your My Account on your desktop or on a mobile phone click here <a href="#">http://thorin.as.uk/my-account</a>	✘
Mar 15, 2017 10:03	Hi! Hi! There is planned maintenance in the London area 000 area this week. If your service is affected, you can get updates here <a href="#">http://thorin.as.uk</a>	✘
Mar 06, 2017 14:50	Hi! Hi! Your new bill is ready to view. Go to your My Account on your desktop or on a mobile phone click here <a href="#">http://thorin.as.uk/my-account</a>	✘
Dec 28, 2016 09:53	Hi, we have your agreement to receive text price offers and we would like to contact you, this offer applies to your line in info, your monthly billings change will be sent to you via text at your next bill, thank	✘
Dec 06, 2016 13:09	Hi! Hi! Your new bill is ready to view. Go to your My Account on your desktop or on a mobile phone click here <a href="#">http://thorin.as.uk/my-account</a>	✘
Nov 08, 2016 11:29	Hi! Hi! There is planned maintenance in the London area 000 area this week. If your service is affected, you can get updates here <a href="#">http://thorin.as.uk</a>	✘
Sep 07, 2016 17:05	Hi! Hi! Your new bill is ready to view. Go to your My Account on your desktop or on a mobile phone click here <a href="#">http://thorin.as.uk/my-account</a>	✘

## 14 AP Tab

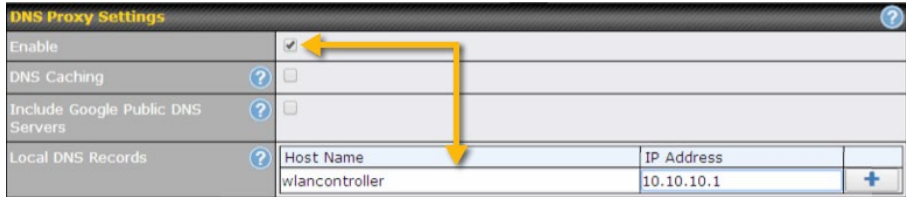
### 14.1 AP

#### 14.1.1 AP Controller

Clicking on the **AP** tab will default to this menu, where you can view basic AP management options:

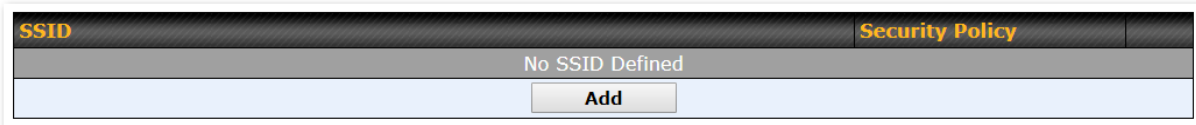


AP Controller	
AP Management	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Support Remote AP	<input type="checkbox"/>
Sync. Method	As soon as possible ▾
Permitted AP	<input type="radio"/> Any <input checked="" type="radio"/> Approved List <div style="border: 1px solid gray; height: 100px; width: 100%;"></div> <p>(One serial number per line)</p>

AP Controller	
<h3>AP Management</h3>	<p>The AP controller for managing Pepwave APs can be enabled by checking this box. When this option is enabled, the AP controller will wait for management connections originating from APs over the LAN on TCP and UDP port 11753. It will also wait for captive portal connections on TCP port 443. An extended DHCP option, <b>CAPWAP Access Controller addresses</b> (field 138), will be added to the DHCP server. A local DNS record, <b>AP Controller</b>, will be added to the local DNS proxy.</p>
<h3>Support Remote AP</h3>	<p>The AP controller supports remote management of Pepwave APs. When this option is enabled, the AP controller will wait for management connections originating from remote APs over the WAN on TCP and UDP port 11753. It will also wait for captive portal connections on TCP port 443.</p> <p>The DHCP server and/or local DNS server of the remote AP's network should be configured in the <b>DNS Proxy Settings menu</b> under <b>Network&gt;LAN</b>. The procedure is as follows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Define an extended DHCP option, <b>CAPWAP Access Controller addresses</b> (field 138), in the DHCP server, where the values are the AP controller's public IP addresses; and/or</li> <li>2. Create a local DNS record for the AP controller with a value corresponding to the AP controller's public IP address.</li> </ol>
	
<h3>Sync. Method</h3>	<p>Select the required option to synchronize the managed AP's. Options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• As soon as possible (default)</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Progressively (synchronize AP's in groups)</li> <li>One at a time (synchronize one AP at a time)</li> </ul>
<b>Permitted AP</b>	Access points to manage can be specified here. If <b>Any</b> is selected, the AP controller will manage any AP that reports to it. If <b>Approved List</b> is selected, only APs with serial numbers listed in the provided text box will be managed.

## 14.1.2 Wireless SSID




Current SSID information appears in the **SSID** section. To edit an existing SSID, click its name in the list. To add a new SSID, click **Add**. Note that the following settings vary by model. The below settings shows a new SSID window with Advanced Settings enabled (these are available by selecting the question mark in the top right corner).

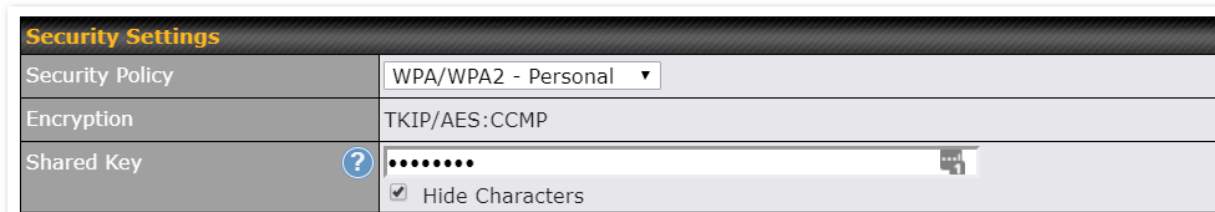


SSID	
<b>SSID Settings</b>	
SSID	PEPLINK_63E6
Enable	Always on
VLAN	0 (0: Untagged) <input type="checkbox"/> Use VLAN Pool
Broadcast SSID	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Data Rate	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Auto <input type="radio"/> Fixed
Multicast Filter	<input type="checkbox"/>
Multicast Rate	MCS0/6M
IGMP Snooping	<input type="checkbox"/>
DHCP Relay	<input type="checkbox"/>
DHCP Option 82	<input type="checkbox"/>
Network Priority (QoS)	Gold
Layer 2 Isolation	<input type="checkbox"/>
Maximum number of clients	2.4 GHz: 0 5 GHz: 0 (0: Unlimited)
Band Steering	<input type="checkbox"/> Disable

SSID Settings	
<b>SSID</b>	This setting specifies the SSID of the virtual AP to be scanned by Wi-Fi clients.
<b>Enable</b>	Click the drop-down menu to apply a time schedule to this interface
<b>VLAN</b>	This setting specifies the VLAN ID to be tagged on all outgoing packets generated from this wireless network (i.e., packets that travel from the Wi-Fi segment through the Pepwave AP One unit to the Ethernet segment via the LAN port). The default value of this setting is <b>0</b> , which means VLAN tagging is disabled (instead of tagged with zero). Use of a VLAN pool is enabled by selecting the checkbox.
<b>Broadcast SSID</b>	This setting specifies whether or not Wi-Fi clients can scan the SSID of this wireless network. <b>Broadcast SSID</b> is enabled by default.
<b>Data Rate <sup>A</sup></b>	Select <b>Auto</b> to allow the Pepwave router to set the data rate automatically, or select <b>Fixed</b> and choose a rate from the displayed drop-down menu.
<b>Multicast Filter<sup>A</sup></b>	This setting enables the filtering of multicast network traffic to the wireless SSID.

<b>Multicast Rate<sup>A</sup></b>	This setting specifies the transmit rate to be used for sending multicast network traffic. The selected <b>Protocol</b> and <b>Channel Bonding</b> settings will affect the rate options and values available here.
<b>IGMP Snooping<sup>A</sup></b>	To allow the Pepwave router to listen to internet group management protocol (IGMP) network traffic, select this option.
<b>DHCP Relay</b>	Put the address of the DHCP server in this field.. DHCP requests will be relayed to this DHCP server
<b>DHCP Option 82<sup>A</sup></b>	If you use a distributed DHCP server/relay environment, you can enable this option to provide additional information on the manner in which clients are physically connected to the network.
<b>Layer 2 Isolation<sup>A</sup></b>	<b>Layer 2</b> refers to the second layer in the ISO Open System Interconnect model. When this option is enabled, clients on the same VLAN, SSID, or subnet are isolated to that VLAN, SSID, or subnet, which can enhance security. Traffic is passed to upper communication layer(s). By default, the setting is disabled.
<b>Maximum Number of Clients</b>	Indicate the maximum number of clients that should be able to connect to each frequency.
<b>Band Steering</b>	To reduce 2.4 GHz band overcrowding, AP with band steering steers clients capable of 5 GHz operation to 5 GHz frequency. Choose between: <b>Force</b> - Clients capable of 5 GHz operation are only offered with 5 GHz frequency. <b>Prefer</b> - Clients capable of 5 GHz operation are encouraged to associate with 5 GHz frequency. If the clients insist to attempt on 2.4 GHz frequency, 2.4 GHz frequency will be offered. <b>Disable</b> - Default

<sup>A</sup> - Advanced feature. Click the  button on the top right-hand corner to activate.



The screenshot shows a 'Security Settings' form with the following fields:

- Security Policy:** WPA/WPA2 - Personal (dropdown menu)
- Encryption:** TKIP/AES:CCMP
- Shared Key:** A text input field containing 12 dots, with a help icon (question mark) on the left and a 'Hide Characters' checkbox below it.

Security Settings	
<b>Security Policy</b>	<p>This setting configures the wireless authentication and encryption methods. Available options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Open</b> (No Encryption)</li> <li>• <b>WPA3 -Personal</b> (AES:CCMP)</li> <li>• <b>WPA2/WPA3 -Personal</b> (AES:CCMP)</li> </ul>

- **WPA2 -Personal** (AES:CCMP)
- **WPA2 – Enterprise**
- **WPA/WPA2 - Personal** (TKIP/AES: CCMP)
- **WPA/WPA2 – Enterprise**

When **WPA/WPA2 - Enterprise** is configured, RADIUS-based 802.1 x authentication is enabled. Under this configuration, the **Shared Key** option should be disabled. When using this method, select the appropriate version using the **V1/V2** controls. The security level of this method is known to be very high.

When **WPA/WPA2- Personal** is configured, a shared key is used for data encryption and authentication. When using this configuration, the **Shared Key** option should be enabled. Key length must be between eight and 63 characters (inclusive). The security level of this method is known to be high.

**NOTE:**

When **WPA2/WPA3- Personal** is configured, if a managed AP which is NOT WPA3 PSK capable, the AP Controller will not push those WPA3 and WPA2/WPA3 SSID to that AP.

Access Control Settings	
Restricted Mode	Deny all except listed ▾
MAC Address List	<input type="text"/>

## Access Control

### Restricted Mode

The settings allow the administrator to control access using MAC address filtering. Available options are **None**, **Deny all except listed**, and **Accept all except listed**

### MAC Address List

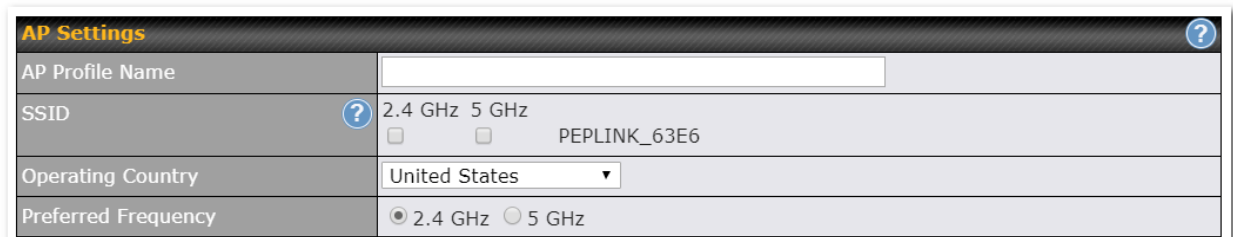
Connections coming from the MAC addresses in this list will be either denied or accepted based on the option selected in the previous field.

If more than one MAC address needs to be entered, you can use a carriage return to separate them.

RADIUS Server Settings	Primary Server		Secondary Server	
Host	<input type="text"/>		<input type="text"/>	
Secret	<input type="text"/>		<input type="text"/>	
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Hide Characters		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Hide Characters	
Authentication Port	1812	Default	1812	Default
Accounting Port	1813	Default	1813	Default
NAS-Identifier	Device Name ▾			

RADIUS Server Settings	
<b>Host</b>	Enter the IP address of the primary RADIUS server and, if applicable, the secondary RADIUS server.
<b>Secret</b>	Enter the RADIUS shared secret for the primary server and, if applicable, the secondary RADIUS server.
<b>Authentication Port</b>	In the field, enter the UDP authentication port(s) used by your RADIUS server(s) or click the <b>Default</b> button to enter <b>1812</b> .
<b>Accounting Port</b>	In the field, enter the UDP accounting port(s) used by your RADIUS server(s) or click the <b>Default</b> button to enter <b>1813</b> .
<b>NAS-Identifier</b>	Choose between <b>Device Name</b> , <b>LAN MAC address</b> , <b>Device Serial Number</b> and <b>Custom Value</b>

### 14.1.3 AP > Profiles



AP Settings	
<b>AP Profile Name</b>	Ap Profile name
<b>SSID</b>	You can select the wireless networks for 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz separately for each SSID.
<b>Operating</b>	This drop-down menu specifies the national/regional regulations which the Wi-Fi radio

<p><b>Country</b></p>	<p>should follow.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If a North American region is selected, RF channels 1 to 11 will be available and the maximum transmission power will be 26 dBm (400 mW).</li> <li>• If European region is selected, RF channels 1 to 13 will be available. The maximum transmission power will be 20 dBm (100 mW).</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Users are required to choose an option suitable to local laws and regulations.</p>
<p><b>Preferred Frequency</b></p>	<p>Indicate the preferred frequency to use for clients to connect.</p>

**Important Note**

Per FCC regulation, the country selection is not available on all models marketed in the US. All US models are fixed to US channels only.

	2.4 GHz	5 GHz
Protocol	802.11ng	802.11n/ac
Channel Width	Auto	Auto
Channel	Auto <input type="button" value="Edit"/> Channels: 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11	Auto <input type="button" value="Edit"/> Channels: 36 40 44 48 149 153 157 161 165
Auto Channel Update	Daily at 03:00 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Wait until no active client associated	Daily at 03:00 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Wait until no active client associated
Output Power	Fixed: Max <input type="checkbox"/> Boost	Fixed: Max <input type="checkbox"/> Boost
Client Signal Strength Threshold	0 -95 dBm (0: Unlimited)	0 -95 dBm (0: Unlimited)
Maximum number of clients	0 (0: Unlimited)	0 (0: Unlimited)

**AP Settings (part 2)**


<p><b>Protocol</b></p>	<p>This option allows you to specify whether 802.11b and/or 802.11g client association requests will be accepted. Available options are <b>802.11ng</b> and <b>802.11na</b>. By default, <b>802.11ng</b> is selected.</p>
<p><b>Channel Width</b></p>	<p>Available options are <b>20 MHz</b>, <b>40 MHz</b>, and <b>Auto (20/40 MHz)</b>. Default is <b>Auto (20/40 MHz)</b>, which allows both widths to be used simultaneously.</p>
<p><b>Channel</b></p>	<p>This option allows you to select which 802.11 RF channel will be utilized. <b>Channel 1 (2.412 GHz)</b> is selected by default.</p>
<p><b>Auto Channel Update</b></p>	<p>Indicate the time of day at which update automatic channel selection.</p>
<p><b>Output Power</b></p>	<p>This option is for specifying the transmission output power for the Wi-Fi AP. There are 4 relative power levels available – <b>Max</b>, <b>High</b>, <b>Mid</b>, and <b>Low</b>. The actual output power will be bound by the regulatory limits of the selected country.</p>





**Client Signal Strength Threshold**

This setting determines the maximum strength at which the Wi-Fi AP can broadcast

**Maximum number of clients**

This setting determines the maximum number of clients that can connect to this Wi-Fi frequency.

Advanced Wi-Fi AP settings can be displayed by clicking the  on the top right-hand corner of the **Wi-Fi AP Settings** section, which can be found at **AP>Settings**. Other models will display a separate section called **Wi-Fi AP Advanced Settings**, which can be found at **Advanced>Wi-Fi Settings**.

Management VLAN ID	 0 (0: Untagged)
Operating Schedule	Always on ▾
Beacon Rate	 1 Mbps ▾
Beacon Interval	 100 ms ▾
DTIM	 1 <input type="button" value="Default"/>
RTS Threshold	0 <input type="button" value="Default"/>
Fragmentation Threshold	0 (0: Disable) <input type="button" value="Default"/>
Distance / Time Converter	<input type="range"/> 4050 m <small>Note: Input distance for recommended values</small>
Slot Time	 <input type="radio"/> Auto <input checked="" type="radio"/> Custom 9 <input type="text"/> μs <input type="button" value="Default"/>
ACK Timeout	 48 <input type="text"/> μs <input type="button" value="Default"/>
Frame Aggregation	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Aggregation Length	50000 <input type="button" value="Default"/>

### Advanced AP Settings

**Management VLAN ID**

This field specifies the VLAN ID to tag to management traffic, such as communication traffic between the AP and the AP Controller. The value is zero by default, which means that no VLAN tagging will be applied.

NOTE: Change this value with caution as alterations may result in loss of connection to the AP Controller.

**Operating Schedule**

Choose from the schedules that you have defined in System>Schedule. Select the schedule for the integrated AP to follow from the drop-down menu.

**Beacon Rate** <sup>A</sup>


This option is for setting the transmit bit rate for sending a beacon. By default, **1Mbps** is selected.

**Beacon Interval** <sup>A</sup>

This option is for setting the time interval between each beacon. By default, **100ms** is selected.



<b>DTIM</b> <sup>A</sup>	This field allows you to set the frequency for the beacon to include delivery traffic indication messages. The interval is measured in milliseconds. The default value is set to <b>1 ms</b> .
<b>RTS Threshold</b> <sup>A</sup>	The RTS (Request to Clear) threshold determines the level of connection required before the AP starts sending data. The recommended standard of the RTS threshold is around 500.
<b>Fragmentation Threshold</b> <sup>A</sup>	This setting determines the maximum size of a packet before it gets fragmented into multiple pieces.
<b>Distance / Time Convertor</b>	Select the range you wish to cover with your Wi-Fi, and the router will make recommendations for the Slot Time and ACK Timeout.
<b>Slot Time</b> <sup>A</sup>	This field is for specifying the unit wait time before transmitting a packet. By default, this field is set to <b>9 μs</b> .
<b>ACK Timeout</b> <sup>A</sup>	This field is for setting the wait time to receive an acknowledgement packet before performing a retransmission. By default, this field is set to <b>48 μs</b> .
<b>Frame Aggregation</b> <sup>A</sup>	This option allows you to enable frame aggregation to increase transmission throughput.

<sup>A</sup> - Advanced feature, please click the  button on the top right-hand corner to activate.



**Web Administration Settings**

Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Web Access Protocol	<input type="radio"/> HTTP <input checked="" type="radio"/> HTTPS
Management Port	<input type="text" value="443"/>
HTTP to HTTPS Redirection	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Admin Username	<input type="text" value="admin"/>
Admin Password	<input type="password" value="....."/> <input type="button" value="Generate"/>
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Hide Characters

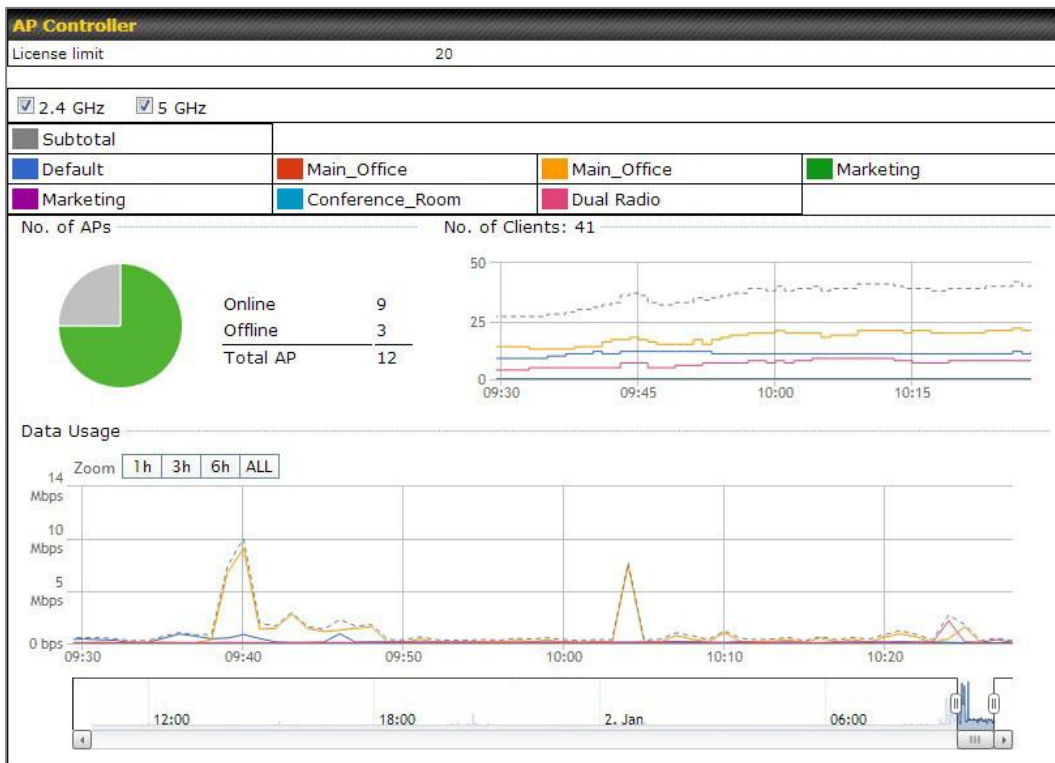
Web Administration Settings	
<b>Enable</b>	Ticking this box enables web admin access for APs located on the WAN.
<b>Web Access Protocol</b>	Determines whether the web admin portal can be accessed through HTTP or HTTPS
<b>Management Port</b>	Determines the port at which the management UI can be accessed.
<b>HTTP to HTTPS</b>	Redirects HTTP request to HTTPS

<b>redirection</b>	
<b>Admin Username</b>	Determines the username to be used for logging into the web admin portal
<b>Admin Password</b>	Determines the password for the web admin portal on external AP.

## 14.2 AP Controller Status

### 14.2.1 Info

A comprehensive overview of your AP can be accessed by navigating to **AP > Info**.



### AP Controller

#### License Limit

This field displays the maximum number of AP your Balance router can control. You can purchase licenses to increase the number of AP you can manage.

<b>Frequency</b>	Underneath, there are two check boxes labeled <b>2.4 Ghz</b> and <b>5 Ghz</b> . Clicking either box will toggle the display of information for that frequency. By default, the graphs display the number of clients and data usage for both 2.4GHz and 5 GHz frequencies.
<b>SSID</b>	The colored boxes indicate the SSID to display information for. Clicking any colored box will toggle the display of information for that SSID. By default, all the graphs show information for all SSIDs.
<b>No. of APs</b>	This pie chart and table indicates how many APs are online and how many are offline.
<b>No.of Clients</b>	This graph displays the number of clients connected to each network at any given time. Mouse over any line on the graph to see how many clients connected to a specific SSID for that point in time.
<b>Data Usage</b>	This graph enables you to see the data usage of any SSID for any given time period. Mouse over any line on the graph to see the data usage by each SSID for that point in time. Use the buttons next to <b>Zoom</b> to select the time scale you wish to view. In addition, you could use the sliders at the bottom to further refine your timescale.

## 14.2.2 Access Points (Usage)

A detailed breakdown of data usage for each AP is available at **AP> Access Point**.

**Search Filter**

AP Name / Serial Number / SSID	<input type="text" value="All"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Include Offline APs	
Search Result	

**Managed APs** Expand Collapse

Name	IP Address	MAC	Location	Firmware Pack ID	Configuration
Default (8/9 online)					
<input type="checkbox"/> J100-AM17-BC00	10.8.82.11	00:1A:DD:BD:73:E0	-	3.5.2	None ✓ -

Usage	
<b>AP Name/Serial Number</b>	This field enables you to quickly find your device if you know its name or serial number. Fill in the field to begin searching. Partial names and serial numbers are supported.
<b>Online Status</b>	This button toggles whether your search will include offline devices.
<b>Managed Wireless Devices</b>	<p>This table shows the detailed information on each AP, including channel, number of clients, upload traffic, and download traffic. Click the blue arrows at the left of the table to expand and collapse information on each device group. You could also expand and collapse all groups by using the <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">Expand</span> <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">Collapse</span> buttons.</p> <p>On the right of the table, you will see the following icons:   .</p> <p>Click the  icon to see a usage table for each client:</p>

**Client List**

MAC Address	IP Address	Type	Signal	SSID	Upload	Download
80:56:f2:98:75:ff	10.9.2.7	802.11ng	Excellent (37)	Balance	66.26 MB	36.26 MB
c4:6a:b7:bf:d7:15	10.9.2.123	802.11ng	Excellent (42)	Balance	6.65 MB	2.26 MB
70:56:81:1d:87:f3	10.9.2.102	802.11ng	Good (23)	Balance	1.86 MB	606.63 KB
e0:63:e5:83:45:c8	10.9.2.101	802.11ng	Excellent (39)	Balance	3.42 MB	474.52 KB
18:00:2d:3d:4e:7f	10.9.2.66	802.11ng	Excellent (25)	Balance	640.29 KB	443.57 KB
14:5a:05:80:4f:40	10.9.2.76	802.11ng	Excellent (29)	Balance	2.24 KB	3.67 KB
00:1a:dd:c5:4e:24	10.8.9.84	802.11ng	Excellent (29)	Wireless	9.86 MB	9.76 MB
00:1a:dd:bb:29:ec	10.8.9.73	802.11ng	Excellent (25)	Wireless	9.36 MB	11.14 MB
40:b0:fa:c3:26:2c	10.8.9.18	802.11ng	Good (23)	Wireless	118.05 MB	7.92 MB
e4:25:e7:8a:d3:12	10.10.11.23	802.11ng	Excellent (35)	Marketing	74.78 MB	4.58 MB
04:f7:e4:ef:68:05	10.10.11.71	802.11ng	Poor (12)	Marketing	84.84 KB	119.32 KB

Close

Click the icon to configure each client

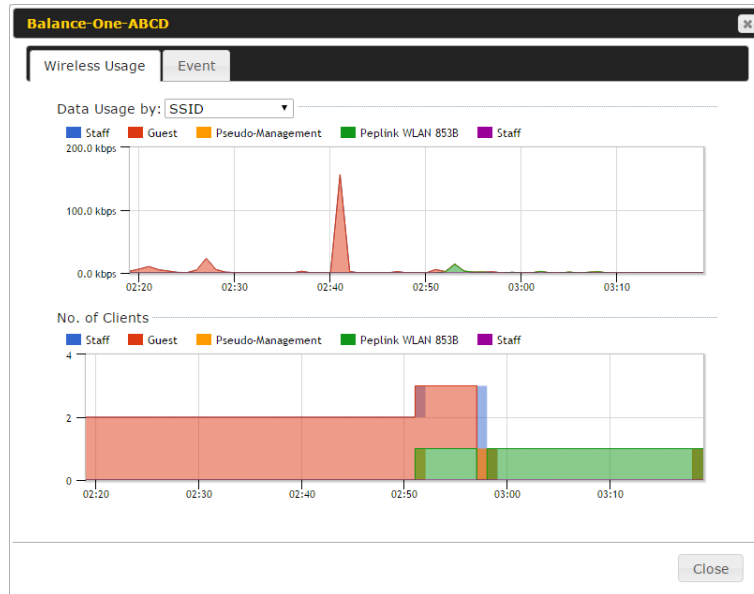
**AP Details**

Serial Number	1111-2222-3333
MAC Address	00:1A:DD:BD:73:E0
Product Name	Pepwave AP Pro Duo
Name	<input type="text"/>
Location	<input type="text"/>
Firmware Version	3.5.2
Firmware Pack	Default (None) ▾
AP Client Limit	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Follow AP Profile <input type="radio"/> Custom
2.4 GHz SSID List	T4Open
5 GHz SSID List	T4Open
Last config applied by controller	Mon Nov 23 11:25:03 HKT 2015
Uptime	Wed Nov 11 15:00:27 HKT 2015
Current Channel	1 (2.4 GHz) 153 (5 GHz)
Channel	2.4 GHz: Follow AP Profile ▾ 5 GHz: Follow AP Profile ▾
Output Power	2.4 GHz: Follow AP Profile ▾ 5 GHz: Follow AP Profile ▾

Close

For easier network management, you can give each client a name and designate its location. You can also designate which firmware pack (if any) this client will follow, as well as the channels on which the client will broadcast.

Click the icon to see a graph displaying usage:



Click any point in the graphs to display detailed usage and client information for that device, using that SSID, at that point in time. On the **Data Usage by** menu, you can display the information by SSID or by AP send/receive rate.

Click the **Event** tab next to **Wireless Usage** to view a detailed event log for that particular device:

**Event Information**

**Events**

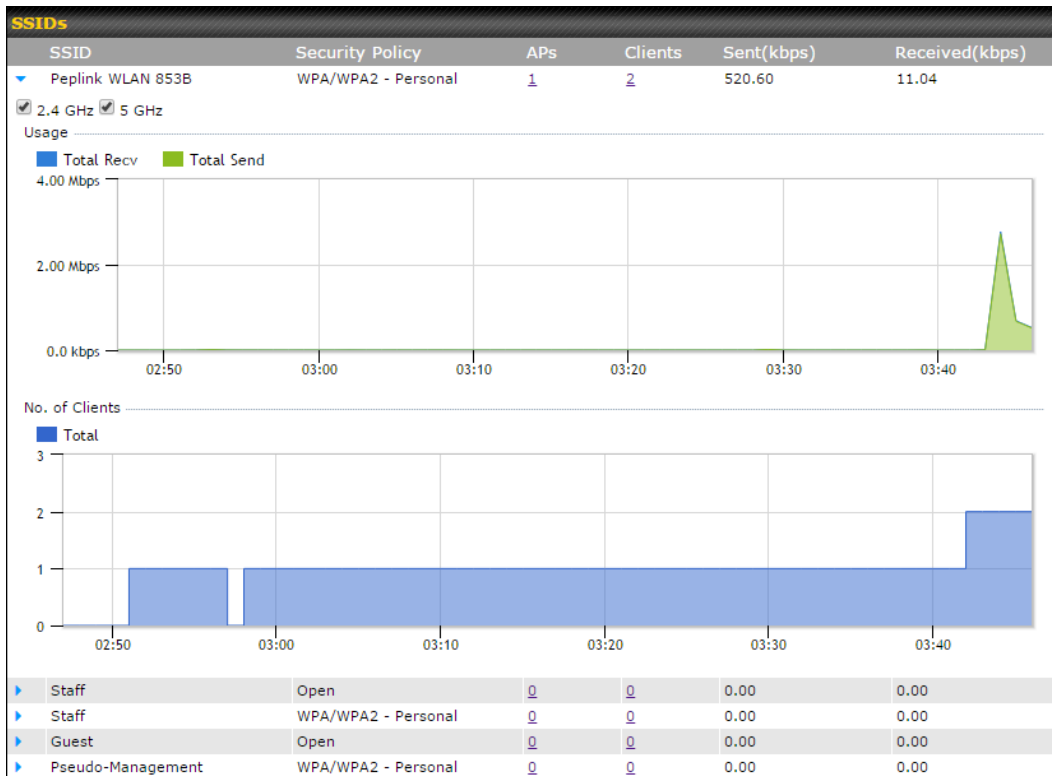
Jan 2 11:53:39	Client 00:26:BB:08:AC:FD associated with Wireless_11a
Jan 2 11:39:31	Client 60:67:20:24:B6:4C disassociated from Marketing_11a
Jan 2 11:16:55	Client A8:BB:CF:E1:0F:1E disassociated from Balance_11a
Jan 2 11:11:54	Client A8:BB:CF:E1:0F:1E associated with Balance_11a
Jan 2 11:10:45	Client 60:67:20:24:B6:4C associated with Marketing_11a
Jan 2 11:00:36	Client 00:21:6A:35:59:A4 associated with Balance_11a
Jan 2 11:00:20	Client 60:67:20:24:B6:4C disassociated from Marketing_11a
Jan 2 10:59:09	Client 00:21:6A:35:59:A4 disassociated from Balance_11a
Jan 2 10:42:28	Client F4:B7:E2:16:35:E9 associated with Balance_11a
Jan 2 10:29:12	Client 84:7A:88:78:1E:4B associated with Balance_11a
Jan 2 10:24:27	Client 90:B9:31:0D:11:EC disassociated from Marketing_11a
Jan 2 10:24:27	Client 90:B9:31:0D:11:EC roamed to Marketing_11a at 2830-BFC8-D230
Jan 2 10:13:22	Client E8:8D:28:A8:43:93 associated with Balance_11a
Jan 2 10:13:22	Client E8:8D:28:A8:43:93 roamed to Balance_11a from 2830-BF7F-694C
Jan 2 10:07:52	Client CC:3A:61:89:07:F3 associated with Wireless_11a
Jan 2 10:04:35	Client 60:67:20:24:B6:4C associated with Marketing_11a
Jan 2 10:03:38	Client 60:67:20:24:B6:4C disassociated from Marketing_11a
Jan 2 09:58:27	Client 00:26:BB:08:AC:FD disassociated from Wireless_11a
Jan 2 09:52:46	Client 00:26:BB:08:AC:FD associated with Wireless_11a
Jan 2 09:20:26	Client 8C:3A:E3:3F:17:62 associated with Balance_11a

More...

Close

## 14.2.3 Wireless SSID

In-depth SSID reports are available under AP > SSID.



Click the blue arrow on any SSID to obtain more detailed usage information on each SSID.

### 14.2.4 Wireless Client

You can search for specific Wi-Fi users by navigating to **AP > Wireless Client**.

Search Filter	
Client MAC / SSID / AP Serial Number	<input type="text"/>
Maximum Result (1-256)	<input type="text" value="50"/>
Search Result	
<input type="button" value="Search"/>	

Top 10 Clients of last hour (Updated at 03:00)			
Client MAC Address	Upload	Download	
C0:EE:FB:20:13:36	53.5 KB	101.4 KB	☆

Here, you will be able to see your network's heaviest users as well as search for specific users. Click the ☆ icon to bookmark specific users, and click the icon for additional details about each user:

**Client C0:EE:FB:20:13:36** ✕

Information	
Status	Associated
Access Point	1111-2222-3333
SSID	Peplink WLAN 853B
IP Address	192.168.1.34
Duration	00:27:31
Usage (Upload / Download)	141.28 MB / 4.35 MB
RSSI	-48
Rate (Upload / Download)	150M / 48M
Type	802.11na

■ Download ■ Upload

SSID	AP	From	To	Upload	Download
Peplink WLAN 853B	192C-1835-642F	Nov 23 03:43:04	-	141.28 MB	4.35 MB
Peplink WLAN 853B	192C-1835-642F	Nov 23 02:58:36	Nov 23 03:47:52	173.7 KB	94.2 KB
Peplink WLAN 853B	192C-1835-642F	Nov 23 02:52:15	Nov 23 02:58:15	105.9 KB	62.5 KB

## 14.2.5 Nearby Device

A listing of near devices can be accessed by navigating to **AP > Controller Status > Nearby Device**.

Suspected Rogue APs					
BSSID	SSID	Channel	Encryption	Last Seen	Mark as
00:1A:DD:EC:25:22	Wireless	11	WPA2	10 hours ago	
00:1A:DD:EC:25:23	Accounting	11	WPA2	10 hours ago	
00:1A:DD:EC:25:24	Marketing	11	WPA2	11 hours ago	
00:03:7F:00:00:00	MYB1PUSH	1	WPA & WPA2	11 minutes ago	
00:03:7F:00:00:01	MYB1	1	WPA2	15 minutes ago	
00:1A:DD:B9:60:88	PEPWAVE_CB7E	1	WPA & WPA2	5 minutes ago	
00:1A:DD:BB:09:C1	Micro_S1_1	6	WPA & WPA2	1 hour ago	
00:1A:DD:BB:52:A8	MAX HD2 Gobi	11	WPA & WPA2	2 minutes ago	
00:1A:DD:BF:75:81	PEPLINK_05B5	4	WPA & WPA2	1 minute ago	
00:1A:DD:BF:75:82	LK_05B5	4	WPA2	1 minute ago	
00:1A:DD:BF:75:83	LK_05B5_VLAN22	4	WPA2	1 minute ago	
00:1A:DD:C1:ED:E4	dev_captive_portal_test	1	WPA & WPA2	3 minutes ago	
00:1A:DD:C2:E4:C5	PEPWAVE_7052	11	WPA & WPA2	2 hours ago	
00:1A:DD:C3:F1:64	dev_captive_portal_test	6	WPA & WPA2	6 minutes ago	
00:1A:DD:C4:DC:24	ssid_test	8	WPA & WPA2	2 minutes ago	
00:1A:DD:C4:DC:25	SSID New	8	WPA & WPA2	2 minutes ago	
00:1A:DD:C5:46:04	Guest SSID	9	WPA2	2 minutes ago	
00:1A:DD:C5:47:04	PEPWAVE_67B8	1	WPA & WPA2	5 minutes ago	
00:1A:DD:C5:4E:24	G BR1 Portal	2	WPA2	2 minutes ago	
00:1A:DD:C6:9A:48	ssid_test	8	WPA & WPA2	2 hours ago	

### Nearby Devices

Hovering over the device MAC address will result in a popup with information on how this device was detected. Click the icons and the device will be moved to the bottom table of identified devices.

## 14.2.6 Event Log

You can access the AP Controller Event log by navigating to **AP > Controller Status > Event Log**.

Filter	
Search key	Client MAC Address / Wireless SSID / AP Serial Number / AP Profile Name
Time	From <input type="text"/> hh:mm to <input type="text"/> hh:mm
Alerts only	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="button" value="Search"/>	



Events		<a href="#">View Alerts</a>
Jan 2 11:01:11	AP One 300M: Client 54:EA:40:3D:AD:D5 disassociated from Marketing_11a	
Jan 2 11:00:42	AP One 300M: Client 54:EA:40:3D:AD:D5 associated with Marketing_11a	
Jan 2 11:00:38	AP One 300M: Client 54:EA:40:3D:AD:D5 disassociated from Marketing_11a	
Jan 2 11:00:36	AP One 300M: Client 00:11:3A:3E:59:A4 associated with Balance_11a	
Jan 2 11:00:20	AP One 300M: Client 60:67:20:24:06:4C disassociated from Marketing_11a	
Jan 2 11:00:09	AP One 300M: Client 54:EA:40:3D:AD:D5 associated with Marketing_11a	
Jan 2 10:59:09	AP One 300M: Client 00:11:3A:3E:59:A4 disassociated from Balance_11a	
Jan 2 10:59:08	Office Fiber AP: Client 10:00:3D:3D:4E:7F associated with Balance	
Jan 2 10:58:53	Michael's Desk: Client 10:00:3D:3D:4E:7F disassociated from Wireless	
Jan 2 10:58:18	AP One 300M: Client 54:EA:40:3D:AD:D5 disassociated from Marketing_11a	
Jan 2 10:58:03	Office InWall: Client 30:8F:40:89:78:C7 associated with Wireless	
Jan 2 10:57:47	AP One 300M: Client 54:EA:40:3D:AD:D5 associated with Marketing_11a	
Jan 2 10:57:19	AP One 300M: Client 54:EA:40:3D:AD:D5 disassociated from Marketing_11a	
Jan 2 10:57:09	AP One 300M: Client 54:EA:40:3D:AD:D5 associated with Marketing_11a	
Jan 2 10:56:48	AP One 300M: Client 54:EA:40:3D:AD:D5 disassociated from Marketing_11a	
Jan 2 10:56:39	AP One 300M: Client 54:EA:40:3D:AD:D5 associated with Marketing_11a	
Jan 2 10:56:19	AP One 300M: Client 00:11:3A:3E:59:A4 associated with Marketing_11a	
Jan 2 10:56:09	AP One 300M: Client 9C:94:09:10:39:4C associated with Marketing_11a	
Jan 2 10:55:42	AP One 300M: Client 54:EA:40:3D:AD:D5 disassociated from Marketing_11a	
Jan 2 10:55:29	AP One 300M: Client 54:EA:40:3D:AD:D5 associated with Marketing_11a	

[More...](#)

## Events

This event log displays all activity on your AP network, down to the client level. Use to filter box to search by MAC address, SSID, AP Serial Number, or AP Profile name. Click **View Alerts** to see only alerts, and click the **More...** link for additional records.

## 14.3 Toolbox

Additional tools for managing firmware packs, power adjustment, and channel assignment can be found at **AP>Toolbox**.

Firmware Packs
Auto Power Adj.
Dynamic Channel Assignment

Pack ID	Release Date	Details	Action
1126	2013-08-26		

Check for Updates
Manual Upload
Default...
No default defined.

## Firmware Packs

This is the first menu that will appear. Here, you can manage the firmware of your AP. Clicking on will display information regarding each firmware pack. To receive new firmware packs, you can either press **Check for Updates** to download new packs or you can press **Manual Upload** to manually upload a firmware pack. Press **Default...** to define which firmware pack is default.

## 15 System Tab

### 15.1 System

#### 15.1.1 Admin Security

There are two types of user accounts available for accessing the web admin: *admin* and *user*. They represent two user levels: the admin level has full administrative access, while the user level is read-only. The user level can access only the device's status information; users cannot make any changes on the device.

A web login session will be logged out automatically when it has been idle longer than the **Web Session Timeout**. Before the session expires, you may click the **Logout** button in the web admin to exit the session.

**0 hours 0 minutes** signifies an unlimited session time. This setting should be used only in special situations, as it will lower the system security level if users do not log out before closing the browser. The **default** is 4 hours, 0 minutes.

For security reasons, after logging in to the web admin Interface for the first time, it is recommended to change the administrator password. Configuring the administration interface to be accessible only from the LAN can further improve system security. Administrative settings configuration is located at **System>Admin Security**.

Admin Settings <span style="float: right;">?</span>	
Router Name	<input type="text"/> hostname: <input type="text"/> <span>⚙️ This configuration is being managed by InControl.</span>
Admin User Name	<input type="text" value="admin"/>
Admin Password	<input type="password" value="....."/>
Confirm Admin Password	<input type="password" value="....."/>
Read-only User Name	<input type="text" value="user"/>
User Password	<input type="password"/>
Confirm User Password	<input type="password"/>
Front Panel Passcode	<input type="checkbox"/>
Web Session Timeout	<span>?</span> <input type="text" value="4"/> Hours <input type="text" value="0"/> Minutes
Authentication by RADIUS	<span>?</span> <input type="checkbox"/> Enable
CLI SSH & Console	<span>?</span> <input type="checkbox"/> Enable
Security	HTTP / HTTPS ▾ <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Redirect HTTP to HTTPS
Web Admin Access	HTTP: <input type="text" value="LAN Only"/> HTTPS: <input type="text" value="LAN Only"/> ▾
Web Admin Port	HTTP: <input type="text" value="80"/> HTTPS: <input type="text" value="443"/>

LAN Connection Access Settings	
Allowed LAN Networks	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Any <input type="radio"/> Allow this network only

Admin Settings	
<b>Router Name</b>	This field allows you to define a name for this Pepwave router. By default, <b>Router Name</b> is set as <b>MAX_XXXX</b> , where <b>XXXX</b> refers to the last 4 digits of the unit's serial number.
<b>Admin User Name</b>	<b>Admin User Name</b> is set as <i>admin</i> by default, but can be changed, if desired.
<b>Admin Password</b>	This field allows you to specify a new administrator password.
<b>Confirm Admin Password</b>	This field allows you to verify and confirm the new administrator password.
<b>Read-only User Name</b>	<b>Read-only User Name</b> is set as <i>user</i> by default, but can be changed, if desired.

<b>User Password</b>	This field allows you to specify a new user password. Once the user password is set, the read-only user feature will be enabled.
<b>Confirm User Password</b>	This field allows you to verify and confirm the new user password.
<b>Web Session Timeout</b>	This field specifies the number of hours and minutes that a web session can remain idle before the Pepwave router terminates its access to the web admin interface. By default, it is set to <b>4 hours</b> .
<b>Authentication by RADIUS</b>	With this box is checked, the web admin will authenticate using an external RADIUS server. Authenticated users are treated as either "admin" with full read-write permission or "user" with read-only access. Local admin and user accounts will be disabled. When the device is not able to communicate with the external RADIUS server, local accounts will be enabled again for emergency access. Additional authentication options will be available once this box is checked.
<b>Auth Protocol</b>	This specifies the authentication protocol used. Available options are <b>MS-CHAP v2</b> and <b>PAP</b> .
<b>Auth Server</b>	This specifies the access address and port of the external RADIUS server.
<b>Auth Server Secret</b>	This field is for entering the secret key for accessing the RADIUS server.
<b>Auth Timeout</b>	This option specifies the time value for authentication timeout.
<b>Accounting Server</b>	This specifies the access address and port of the external accounting server.
<b>Accounting Server Secret</b>	This field is for entering the secret key for accessing the accounting server.
<b>Network Connection</b>	This option is for specifying the network connection to be used for authentication. Users can choose from LAN, WAN, and VPN connections.
<b>CLI SSH</b>	The CLI (command line interface) can be accessed via SSH. This field enables CLI support. For additional information regarding CLI, please refer to <b>Section 30.5</b> .
<b>CLI SSH Port</b>	This field determines the port on which clients can access CLI SSH.
<b>CLI SSH Access</b>	This menu allows you to choose between granting access to LAN and WAN clients, or to LAN clients only.
<b>Security</b>	This option is for specifying the protocol(s) through which the web admin interface can be accessed:

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• HTTP</li> <li>• HTTPS</li> <li>• HTTP/HTTPS</li> </ul> <p>HTTP to HTTPS redirection is enabled by default to force HTTPS access to the web admin interface.</p>
<b>Web Admin Port</b>	This field is for specifying the port number on which the web admin interface can be accessed.
<b>Web Admin Access</b>	<p>This option is for specifying the network interfaces through which the web admin interface can be accessed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• LAN only</li> <li>• LAN/WAN</li> </ul> <p>If LAN/WAN is chosen, the <b>WAN Connection Access Settings</b> form will be displayed.</p>

**LAN Connection Access Settings**

Allowed LAN Networks  Any  Allow this network only Public (10) ▼

LAN Connection Access Settings	
<b>Allowed LAN Networks</b>	This field allows you to permit only specific networks or VLANs to access the Web UI.

**WAN Connection Access Settings**

Allowed Source IP Subnets  Any  Allow access from the following IP subnets only

Allowed WAN IP Address(es)

Connection / IP Address(es)	All	Clear
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 10.88.3.158 (Interface IP)	
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2		
<input type="checkbox"/> Wi-Fi WAN		
<input type="checkbox"/> Cellular 1		
<input type="checkbox"/> Cellular 2		
<input type="checkbox"/> USB		

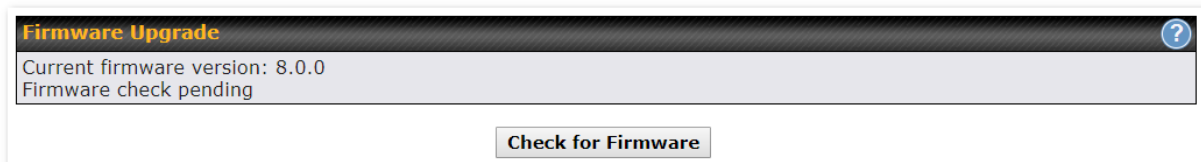
WAN Connection Access Settings	
<b>Allowed Source IP</b>	<p>This field allows you to restrict web admin access only from defined IP subnets.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Any</b> - Allow web admin accesses to be from anywhere, without IP address</li> </ul>

<p><b>Subnets</b></p>	<p>restriction.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Allow access from the following IP subnets only</b> - Restrict web admin access only from the defined IP subnets. When this is chosen, a text input area will be displayed beneath: <p>The allowed IP subnet addresses should be entered into this text area. Each IP subnet must be in form of <i>w.x.y.z/m</i>, where <i>w.x.y.z</i> is an IP address (e.g., <i>192.168.0.0</i>), and <i>m</i> is the subnet mask in CIDR format, which is between 0 and 32 inclusively (For example, <i>192.168.0.0/24</i>).</p> <p>To define multiple subnets, separate each IP subnet one in a line. For example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 192.168.0.0/24</li> <li>• 10.8.0.0/16</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<p><b>Allowed WAN IP Address(es)</b></p>	<p>This is to choose which WAN IP address(es) the web server should listen on.</p>

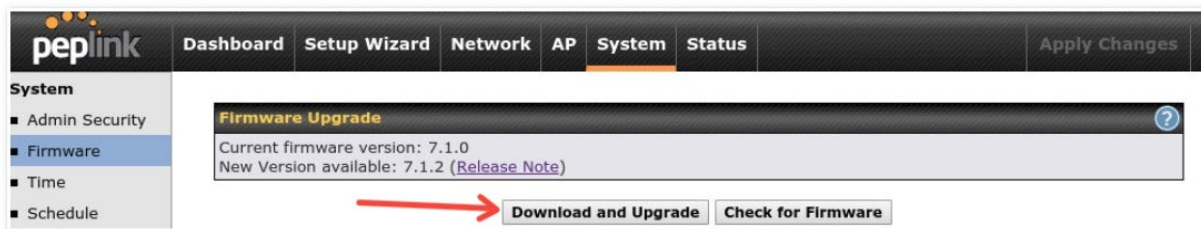
### 15.1.2 Firmware

Upgrading firmware can be done in one of three ways. Using the router's interface to automatically check for an update, using the router's interface to manually upgrade the firmware, or using InControl2 to push an upgrade to a router.

The automatic upgrade can be done from **System > Firmware**.



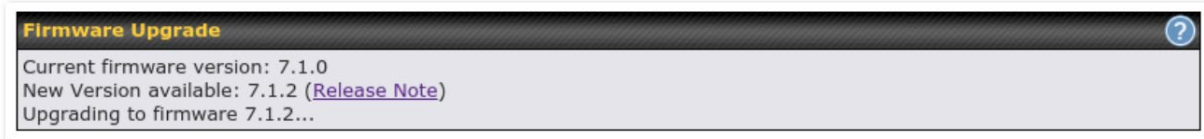
If an update is found the buttons will change to allow you to **Download and Update** the firmware.



Click on the **Download and Upgrade** button. A prompt will be displayed advising to download the Current

Active Configuration. Please click on the underlined download text. After downloading the current config click the **Ok** button to start the upgrade process.

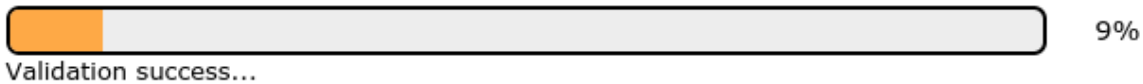
The router will download and then apply the firmware. The time that this process takes will depend on your internet connection's speed.



The firmware will now be applied to the router\*. The amount of time it takes for the firmware to upgrade will also depend on the router that's being upgraded.

### Firmware Upgrade

It may take up to 8 minutes.



\*Upgrading the firmware will cause the router to reboot.

## Web admin interface: install updates manually

In some cases, a special build may be provided via a ticket or it may be found in the forum. Upgrading to the special build can be done using this method, or using IC2 if you are using that to manage your firmware upgrades. A manual upgrade using the GA firmware posted on the site may also be recommended or required for a couple of reasons.

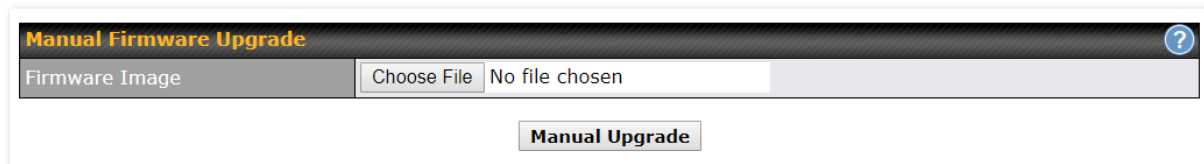
All of the Peplink/Pepwave GA firmware can be found [here](#) Navigate to the relevant product line (ie. Balance, Max, FusionHub, SOHO, etc). Some product lines may have a dropdown that lists all of the products in that product line. Here is a screenshot from the Balance line.

Balance						
Product <input type="text"/>						
Search: <input type="text"/>						
Product	Hardware Revision	Firmware Version	Download Link	Release Notes	User Manual	
Balance 1350	HW2	7.1.2	<a href="#">Download</a>	<a href="#">PDF</a>	<a href="#">PDF</a>	
Balance 1350	HW1	6.3.4	<a href="#">Download</a>	<a href="#">PDF</a>	<a href="#">PDF</a>	
Balance 20	HW1-6	7.1.2	<a href="#">Download</a>	<a href="#">PDF</a>	<a href="#">PDF</a>	
Balance 210	HW4	7.1.2	<a href="#">Download</a>	<a href="#">PDF</a>	<a href="#">PDF</a>	

If the device has more than one firmware version the current hardware revision will be required to know what firmware to download.

Navigate to System > Firmware and click the Choose File button under the Manual Firmware Upgrade section. Navigate to the location that the firmware was downloaded to select the “.img” file and click the Open button.

Click on the Manual Upgrade button to start the upgrade process.



A prompt will be displayed advising to download the Current Active Configuration. Please click on the underlined download text. After downloading the current config click the Ok button to start the upgrade process. The firmware will now be applied to the router\*. The amount of time it takes for the firmware to upgrade will depend on the router that's being upgraded.

#### Firmware Upgrade

It may take up to 8 minutes.



**\*Upgrading the firmware will cause the router to reboot.**

## The InControl method

[Described in this knowledgebase article on our forum.](#)

### 15.1.3 Time

The time server functionality enables the system clock of the Peplink Balance to be synchronized with a specified time server. The settings for time server configuration are located at **System>Time**.



Time Settings	
Time Zone	(GMT) Greenwich Mean Time : Dublin, Edinburgh, Lisbon, Lon ▾ <input type="checkbox"/> Show all
Time Server	0.pepwave.pool.ntp.org <input type="button" value="Default"/>
<input type="button" value="Save"/>	

Time Settings	
<b>Time Zone</b>	This specifies the time zone (along with the corresponding Daylight Savings Time scheme) in which Peplink Balance operates. The <b>Time Zone</b> value affects the time stamps in the event log of the Peplink Balance and e-mail notifications. Check <b>Show all</b> to show all time zone options.
<b>Time Server</b>	This setting specifies the NTP network time server to be utilized by the Peplink Balance.

### 15.1.4 Schedule

Enable and disable different functions (such as WAN connections, outbound policy, and firewalls at different times, based on a user-scheduled configuration profile. The settings for this are located at **System > Schedule**

Schedule			
Enabled			<input type="button" value="🔗"/>
Name	Time	Used by	
Weekdays Only	Weekdays only	-	<input type="button" value="✖"/>
<input type="button" value="New Schedule"/>			

Enable scheduling, and then click on your schedule name or on the **New Schedule** button to begin.

**Edit schedule profile**
✕

**Schedule Settings**

Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <small>The schedule function of those associated features will be lost if profile is disabled.</small>
Name	<input type="text" value="Weekdays Only"/>
Schedule	<input type="text" value="Weekdays only"/>
Used by	<small>You may go to supported feature settings page and set this profile as scheduler.</small>

**Schedule Map**

	Midnight	4am	8am	Noon	4pm	8pm
Sunday	✕	✕	✕	✕	✕	✕
Monday	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Tuesday	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Wednesday	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Thursday	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Friday	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Saturday	✕	✕	✕	✕	✕	✕

Edit Schedule Profile	
<b>Enabling</b>	Click this checkbox to enable this schedule profile. Note that if this is disabled, then any associated features will also have their scheduling disabled.
<b>Name</b>	Enter your desired name for this particular schedule profile.
<b>Schedule</b>	Click the drop-down menu to choose pre-defined schedules as your starting point. Please note that upon selection, previous changes on the schedule map will be deleted.
<b>Schedule Map</b>	Click on the desired times to enable features at that time period. You can hold your mouse for faster entry.

### 15.1.5 Email Notification

The email notification functionality of the Peplink Balance provides a system administrator with up-to-date information on network status. The settings for configuring email notification are found at **System>Email**

## Notification.

Email Notification Setup <span style="float: right;">?</span>	
Email Notification	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable
SMTP Server	smtp.mycompany.com <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Require authentication
SSL Encryption	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> (Note: any server certificate will be accepted)
SMTP Port	465 <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;">Default</span>
SMTP User Name	smtpuser
SMTP Password	•••••
Confirm SMTP Password	•••••
Sender's Email Address	admin@mycompany.com
Recipient's Email Address	system@mycompany.com staff@mycompany.com

Test Email Notification
Save

Email Notification Settings	
<b>Email Notification</b>	This setting specifies whether or not to enable email notification. If <b>Enable</b> is checked, the Peplink Balance will send email messages to system administrators when the WAN status changes or when new firmware is available. If <b>Enable</b> is not checked, email notification is disabled and the Peplink Balance will not send email messages.
<b>SMTP Server</b>	This setting specifies the SMTP server to be used for sending email. If the server requires authentication, check <b>Require authentication</b> .
<b>SSL Encryption</b>	Check the box to enable SMTPS. When the box is checked, <b>SMTP Port</b> will be changed to <b>465</b> automatically.
<b>SMTP Port</b>	This field is for specifying the SMTP port number. By default, this is set to <b>25</b> ; when <b>SSL Encryption</b> is checked, the default port number will be set to <b>465</b> . You may customize the port number by editing this field. Click <b>Default</b> to restore the number to its default setting.
<b>SMTP User Name / Password</b>	This setting specifies the SMTP username and password while sending email. These options are shown only if <b>Require authentication</b> is checked in the <b>SMTP Server</b> setting.
<b>Confirm SMTP Password</b>	This field allows you to verify and confirm the new administrator password.
<b>Sender's Email Address</b>	This setting specifies the email address which the Peplink Balance will use to send its reports.

**Recipient's Email Address**

This setting specifies the email address(es) to which the Peplink Balance will send email notifications. For multiple recipients, separate each email using the enter key.

After you have finished setting up email notifications, you can click the **Test Email Notification** button to test the settings before saving. After **Test Email Notification** is clicked, you will see this screen to confirm the settings:

Test Email Notification	
SMTP Server	smtp.mycompany.com
SMTP Port	465
SMTP UserName	smtpuser
Sender's Email Address	admin@mycompany.com
Recipient's Email Address	system@mycompany.com staff@mycompany.com

Send Test Notification Cancel

Click **Send Test Notification** to confirm. In a few seconds, you will see a message with detailed test results.

Test email sent. Email notification settings are not saved, it will be saved after clicked the 'Save' button.

**Test Result**

```
[INFO] Try email through connection #3
[<-] 220 ESMTP
[->] EHLO balance
[<-] 250-smtp Hello balance [210.210.210.210]
250-SIZE 100000000
250-8BITMIME
250-PIPELINING
250-AUTH PLAIN LOGIN
250-STARTTLS
```

**15.1.6 Event Log**


Event log functionality enables event logging at a specified remote syslog server. The settings for configuring the remote system log can be found at **System>Event Log**.

Send Events to Remote Syslog Server	
Remote Syslog	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Remote Syslog Host	<input type="text"/>

Push Events to Mobile Devices	
Push Events	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Save

Remote Syslog Settings	
<b>Remote Syslog</b>	This setting specifies whether or not to log events at the specified remote syslog server.
<b>Remote Syslog Host</b>	This setting specifies the IP address or hostname of the remote syslog server.
<b>Push Events</b>	The Peplink Balance can also send push notifications to mobile devices that have our Mobile Router Utility installed. Check the box to activate this feature.
	For more information on the Router Utility, go to: <a href="http://www.peplink.com/products/router-utility">www.peplink.com/products/router-utility</a>

### 15.1.7 SNMP

SNMP or simple network management protocol is an open standard that can be used to collect information about the Peplink Balance unit. SNMP configuration is located at **System>SNMP**.

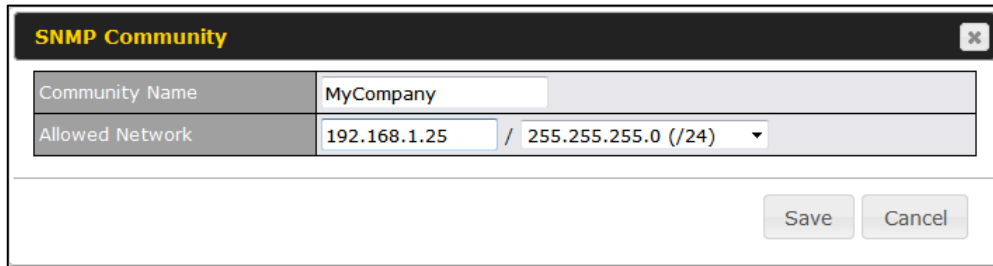
SNMP Settings	
SNMP Device Name	Balance_0D84
SNMP Port	161 <input type="button" value="Default"/>
SNMPv1	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable
SNMPv2c	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable
SNMPv3	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable
<input type="button" value="Save"/>	

Community Name	Allowed Source Network	Access Mode	
MyCompany	192.168.1.20/24	Read Only	<input type="button" value="✘"/>
<input type="button" value="Add SNMP Community"/>			

SNMPv3 User Name	Authentication / Privacy	Access Mode	
SNMPUser	SHA / DES	Read Only	<input type="button" value="✘"/>
<input type="button" value="Add SNMP User"/>			

SNMP Settings	
<b>SNMP Device Name</b>	This field shows the router name defined at <b>System&gt;Admin Security</b> .
<b>SNMP Port</b>	This option specifies the port which SNMP will use. The default port is <b>161</b> .
<b>SNMPv1</b>	This option allows you to enable SNMP version 1.
<b>SNMPv2</b>	This option allows you to enable SNMP version 2.
<b>SNMPv3</b>	This option allows you to enable SNMP version 3.

To add a community for either SNMPv1 or SNMPv2, click the **Add SNMP Community** button in the **Community Name** table, upon which the following screen is displayed:



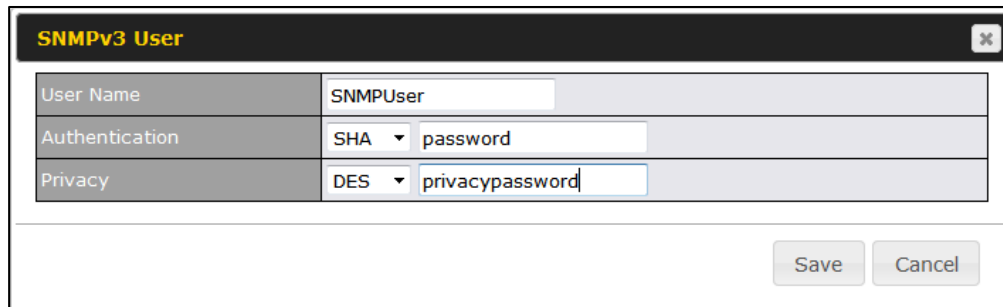
The dialog box titled "SNMP Community" contains the following fields:

Community Name	MyCompany
Allowed Network	192.168.1.25 / 255.255.255.0 (/24)

Buttons: Save, Cancel

SNMP Community Settings	
<b>Community Name</b>	This setting specifies the SNMP community name.
<b>Allowed Source Subnet Address</b>	This setting specifies a subnet from which access to the SNMP server is allowed. Enter subnet address here (e.g., 192.168.1.0) and select the appropriate subnet mask.

To define a user name for SNMPv3, click **Add SNMP User** in the **SNMPv3 User Name** table, upon which the following screen is displayed:



The dialog box titled "SNMPv3 User" contains the following fields:

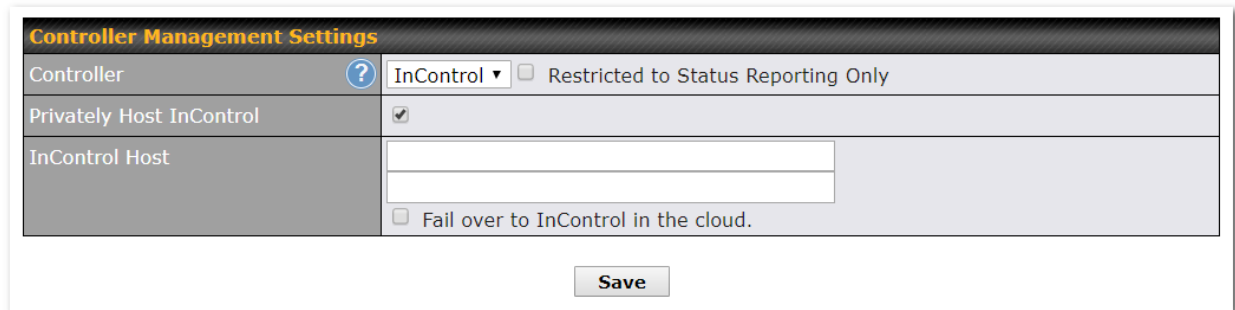
User Name	SNMPUser
Authentication	SHA password
Privacy	DES privacypassword

Buttons: Save, Cancel

SNMPv3 User Settings	
<b>User Name</b>	This setting specifies a user name to be used in SNMPv3.
<b>Authentication Protocol</b>	<p>This setting specifies via a drop-down menu one of the following valid authentication protocols:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• NONE</li> <li>• MD5</li> <li>• SHA</li> </ul> <p>When MD5 or SHA is selected, an entry field will appear for the password.</p>
<b>Privacy Protocol</b>	<p>This setting specifies via a drop-down menu one of the following valid privacy protocols:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• NONE</li> </ul>

- DES
- When DES is selected, an entry field will appear for the password.

## 15.1.8 InControl



Controller Management Settings	
Controller	<span>?</span> InControl <input type="checkbox"/> Restricted to Status Reporting Only
Privately Host InControl	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
InControl Host	<input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Fail over to InControl in the cloud.

InControl is a cloud-based service which allows you to manage all of your Peplink and Pepwave devices with one unified system. With it, you can generate reports, gather statistics, and configure your devices automatically. All of this is now possible with InControl.

When this checkbox is checked, the device's status information will be sent to the Peplink InControl system. This device's usage data and configuration will be sent to the system if you enable the features in the system.

When the box **Restricted to Status Reporting Only** is ticked, the router will only report its status, but can't be managed or configured by InControl.

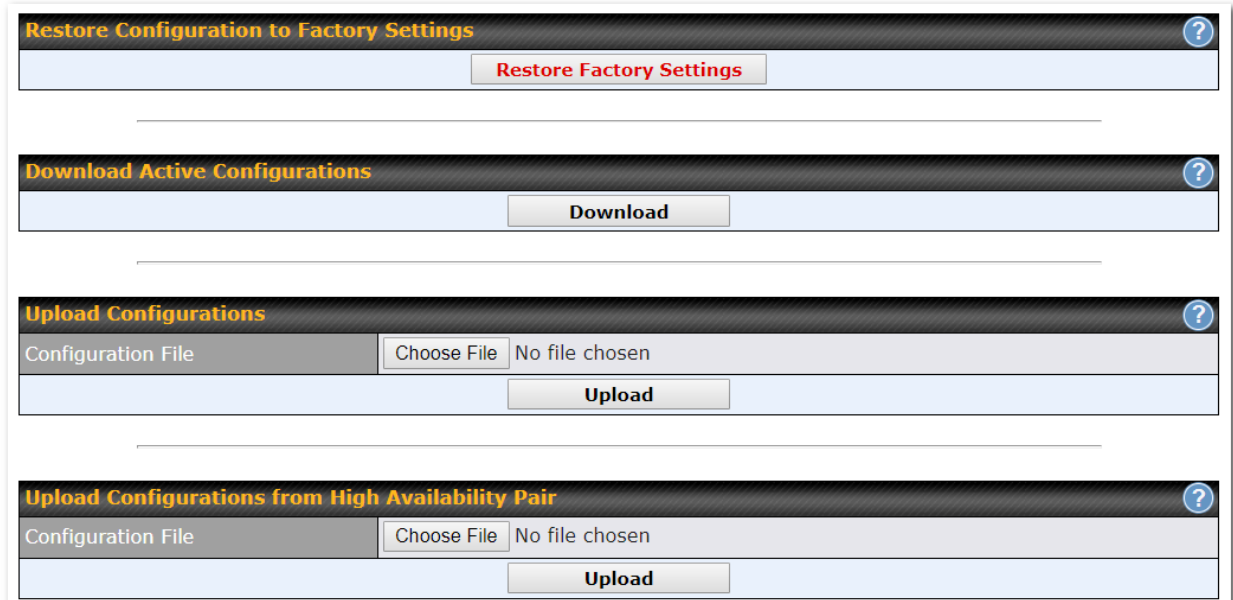
Alternatively, you can also privately host InControl. Simply check the box beside the "Privately Host InControl" open, and enter the IP Address of your InControl Host.

You can sign up for an InControl account at <https://incontrol2.peplink.com/>. You can register your devices under the account, monitor their status, see their usage reports, and receive offline notifications.



## 15.1.9 Configuration

Backing up Peplink Balance settings immediately after successful completion of initial setup is strongly recommended. The functionality to download and upload Peplink Balance settings is found at **System>Configuration**.



The screenshot shows a web interface with four distinct configuration sections, each with a title bar and a help icon (question mark in a circle):

- Restore Configuration to Factory Settings:** Contains a single button labeled "Restore Factory Settings".
- Download Active Configurations:** Contains a single button labeled "Download".
- Upload Configurations:** Features a "Configuration File" label, a "Choose File" button, and the text "No file chosen". Below this is an "Upload" button.
- Upload Configurations from High Availability Pair:** Features a "Configuration File" label, a "Choose File" button, and the text "No file chosen". Below this is an "Upload" button.

Configuration	
<p><b>Restore Configuration to Factory Settings</b></p>	<p>The <b>Restore Factory Settings</b> button is to reset the configuration to factory default settings. After clicking the button, you will need to click the <b>Apply Changes</b> button on the top right corner to make the settings effective.</p>
<p><b>Download Active Configurations</b></p>	<p>Click <b>Download</b> to backup the current active settings.</p>
<p><b>Upload Configurations</b></p>	<p>To restore or change settings based on a configuration file, click <b>Choose File</b> to locate the configuration file on the local computer, and then click <b>Upload</b>. The new settings can then be applied by clicking the <b>Apply Changes</b> button on the page header, or you can cancel the procedure by pressing <b>discard</b> on the main page of the web admin interface.</p>
<p><b>Upload Configurations from High Availability Pair</b></p>	<p>In a high availability (HA) configuration, the Balance unit can quickly load the configuration of its HA counterpart. To do so, click the <b>Upload</b> button. After loading the settings, configure the LAN IP address of the Peplink Balance unit so that it is different from the HA counterpart.</p>

### 15.1.10 Feature Add-ons

Some balance models have features that can be activated upon purchase. Once the purchase is complete, you will receive an activation key. Enter the key in the **Activation Key** field, click **Activate**, and then click **Apply Changes**.

The screenshot shows a web interface titled "Feature Activation". It contains a single text input field labeled "Activation Key" which is currently empty.

### 15.1.11 Reboot

This page provides a reboot button for restarting the system. For maximum reliability, the Peplink Balance Series can be equipped with two copies of firmware, and each copy can be a different version. You can select the firmware version you would like to reboot the device with. The firmware marked with **(Running)** is the current system boot up firmware.

**Please note that a firmware upgrade will always replace the inactive firmware partition.**

The screenshot shows a web interface titled "Reboot System" with a help icon (question mark) in the top right corner. Below the title, it says "Select the firmware you want to use to start up this device:". There are two radio button options: "Firmware 1: 8.0.1b01 build 2658 (Running)" which is selected, and "Firmware 2: 8.0.0 build 2636". At the bottom of the interface is a button labeled "Reboot".

## 15.2 Tools

### 15.2.1 Ping

The ping test tool sends pings through a specific Ethernet interface or a SpeedFusion™ VPN connection. You can specify the number of pings in the field **Number of times** to a maximum number of 10 times. **Packet Size** can be set to a maximum of 1472 bytes. The ping utility is located at **System>Tools>Ping**, illustrated below:

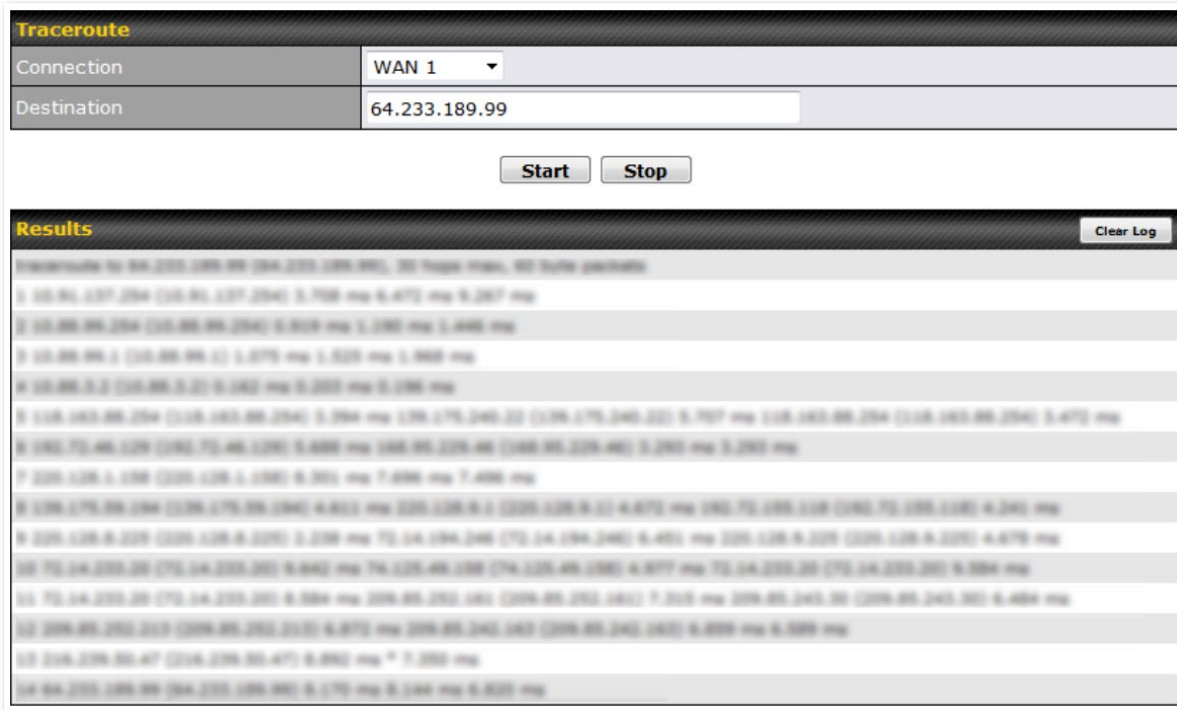
Ping	
Connection	WAN 1
Destination	8.8.8.8
Packet Size	56
Number of times	Times 5
<input type="button" value="Start"/> <input type="button" value="Stop"/>	
Results <span style="float: right;">Clear Log</span>	
<pre> PING 8.8.8.8 (8.8.8.8) from 10.22.1.182 56(84) bytes of data. 64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_req=1 ttl=121 time=11.8 ms 64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_req=2 ttl=121 time=11.7 ms 64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_req=3 ttl=121 time=11.6 ms 64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_req=4 ttl=121 time=11.6 ms 64 bytes from 8.8.8.8: icmp_req=5 ttl=121 time=11.4 ms  --- 8.8.8.8 ping statistics --- 5 packets transmitted, 5 received, 0% packet loss, time 4006ms rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 11.427/11.680/11.888/0.166 ms                     </pre>	

#### Tip

A system administrator can use the ping utility to manually check the connectivity of a particular LAN/WAN connection.

### 15.2.2 Traceroute

The traceroute test tool traces the routing path to the destination through a particular Ethernet interface or a SpeedFusion™ connection. The traceroute test utility is located at **System>Tools>Traceroute**.

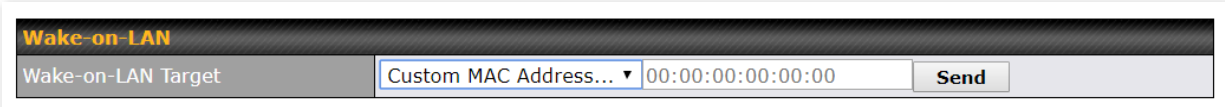


**Tip**

A system administrator can use the traceroute utility to analyze the connection path of a LAN/WAN connection.

### 15.2.3 Wake-on-LAN

Peplink routers can send special “magic packets” to any client specified from the Web UI. To access this feature, navigate to **System > Tools > Wake-on-LAN**



Select a client from the drop-down list and click **Send** to send a “magic packet”

### 15.2.4 WAN Analysis

The WAN Analysis feature allows you to run a WAN to WAN speed test between 2 Peplink devices .

You can set a device up as a **Server** or a **Client**. One device must be set up as a server to run the speed tests and the server must have a public IP address.

**System**

- Admin Security
- Firmware
- Time
- Schedule
- Email Notification
- Event Log
- SNMP
- InControl
- Configuration
- Feature Add-ons
- Reboot

**Tools**

- Ping
- Traceroute
- Wake-on-LAN
- WAN Analysis

## WAN Performance Analysis

Check your point-to-point WAN performance with another peer

**As a server**  
For the peer who has public IP addresses to accept connection.

**As a client**  
For the peer to initiate connection.

The default port is 6000 and can be changed if required. The IP address of the WAN interface will be shown in the **WAN Connection Status** section.

The screenshot shows the Peplink PEPWAVE web interface. The top navigation bar includes 'Dashboard', 'Setup Wizard', 'Network', 'AP', 'System', and 'Status'. The 'System' tab is selected. On the left, a sidebar menu lists various system and tool options, with 'WAN Analysis' highlighted. The main content area is titled 'WAN Performance Analysis' and includes a sub-header 'Check your point-to-point WAN performance with another peer'. Below this, there are two main configuration sections:

**Server Settings**

Status	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Listening (Control Port: 6000)
Control Port	<input type="text" value="6000"/>

Buttons: **Apply** **Stop**

**WAN Connection Status**

1 WAN 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 10.22.1.182
2 WAN 2	<input type="checkbox"/> Disabled
3 WAN 3	<input type="checkbox"/> Disabled
4 WAN 4	<input type="checkbox"/> Disabled
5 WAN 5	<input type="checkbox"/> Disabled
Mobile Internet	<input type="checkbox"/> Disabled

The client side has a few more settings that can be changed. Make sure that the **Control Port** matches what's been entered on the server side. Select the WAN(s) that will be used for testing and enter the Servers WAN IP address. Once all of the options have been set, click the **Start Test** button.

peplink

[Dashboard](#)
[Setup Wizard](#)
[Network](#)
[AP](#)
[System](#)
[Status](#)
Apply Changes

**System**

- Admin Security
- Firmware
- Time
- Schedule
- Email Notification
- Event Log
- SNMP
- InControl
- Configuration
- Feature Add-ons
- Reboot

**Tools**

- Ping
- Traceroute
- Wake-on-LAN
- WAN Analysis
- Storage Manager
- Package Manager

## WAN Performance Analysis

Check your point-to-point WAN performance with another peer

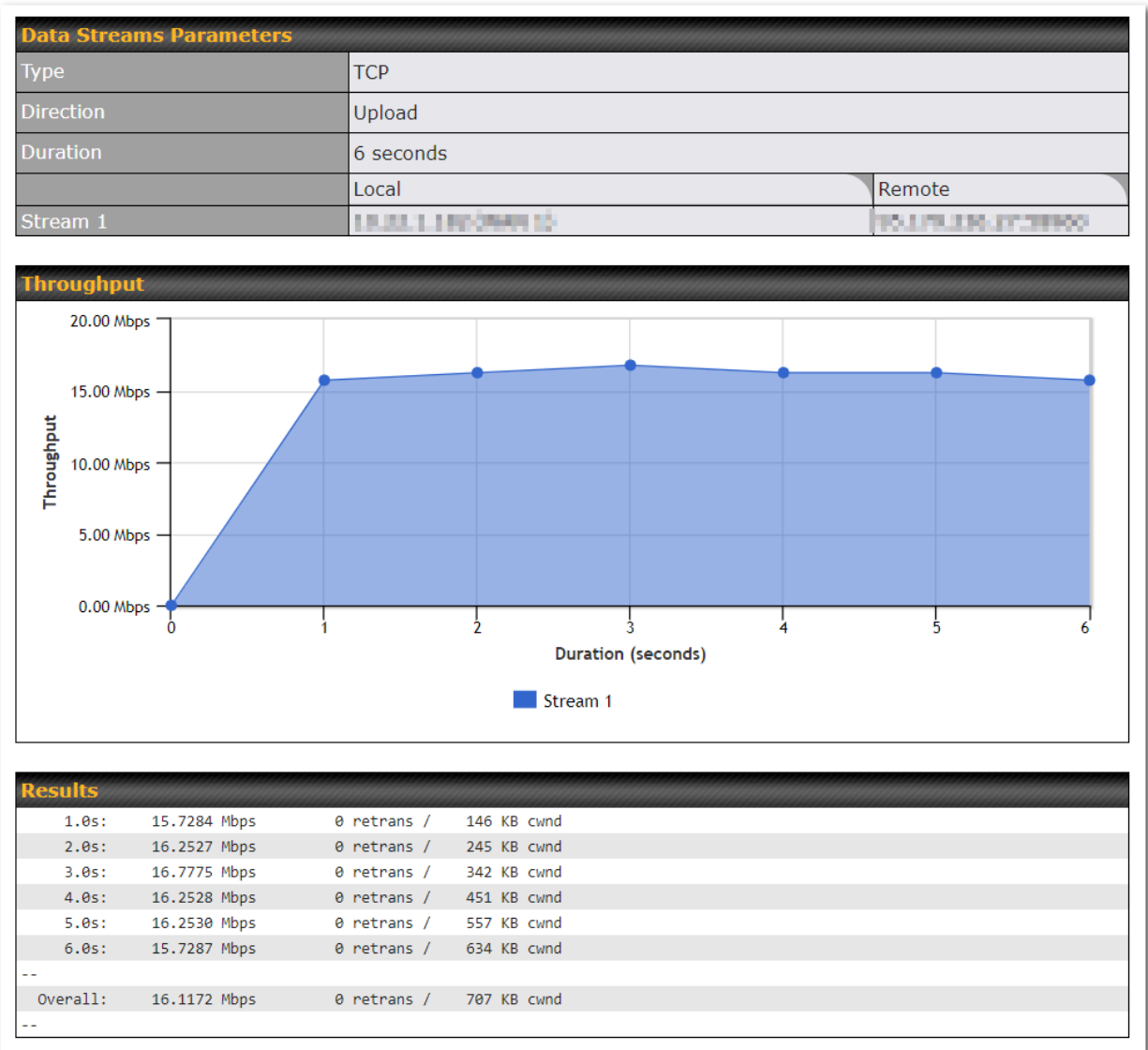
**Client Settings**

Control Port	<input type="text" value="6000"/>
Data Port	<input type="text" value="57280"/> - <input type="text" value="57287"/>
Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> TCP <input type="radio"/> UDP
Direction	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Upload <input type="radio"/> Download
Duration	<input type="text" value="20"/> seconds (5 - 600)

**Data Streams**

Local WAN Connection	Remote IP Address
1. -- Not Used --	<input type="text"/>
2. -- Not Used --	<input type="text"/>
3. -- Not Used --	<input type="text"/>
4. -- Not Used --	<input type="text"/>
5. -- Not Used --	<input type="text"/>
6. -- Not Used --	<input type="text"/>
7. -- Not Used --	<input type="text"/>
8. -- Not Used --	<input type="text"/>

The test output will show the **Data Streams Parameters**, the **Throughput** as a graph, and the **Results**.



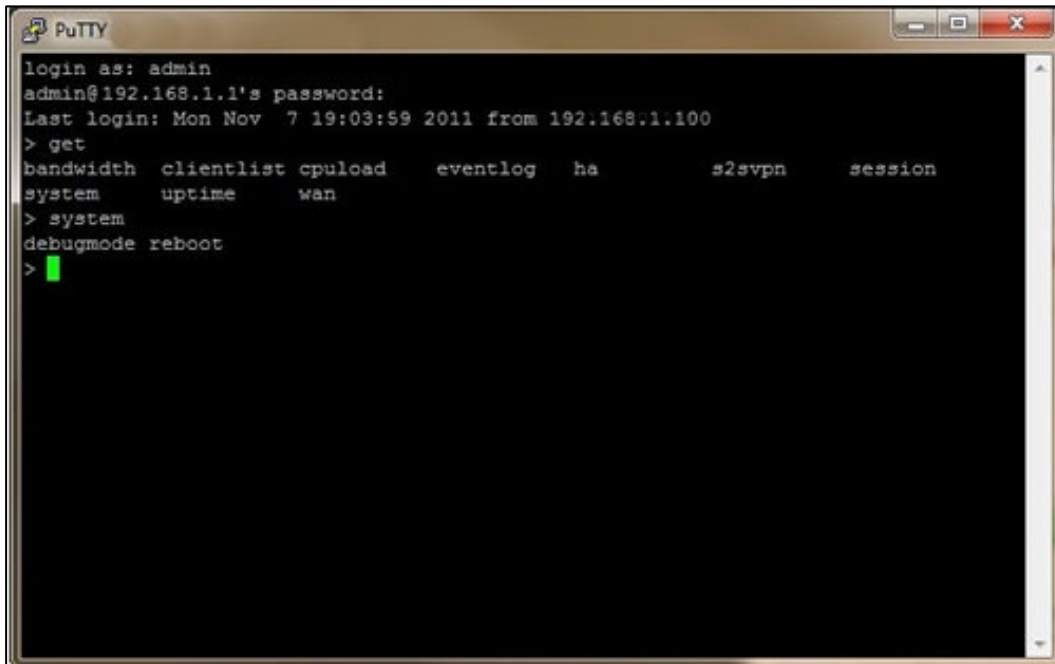
The test can be run again once it's complete by clicking the **Start** button or you can click **Close** and change the parameters for the test.

### 15.3 CLI (Command Line) Support

The serial console connector on some Peplink Balance units is RJ-45. To access the serial console port, prepare a RJ-45 to DB-9 console cable. Connect the RJ-45 end to the unit's console port and the DB-9 end to a terminal's serial port. The port setting will be *115200,8N1*.



The serial console connector on other Peplink Balance units is a DB-9 male connector. To access the serial console port, connect a null modem cable with a DB-9 connector on both ends to a terminal with the port setting of *115200,8N1*.






```
login as: admin
admin@192.168.1.1's password:
Last login: Mon Nov  7 19:03:59 2011 from 192.168.1.100
> get
bandwidth  clientlist  cpuload    eventlog   ha          s2svpn     session
system     uptime      wan
> system
debugmode  reboot
> █
```

## 16 Status Tab







### 16.1 Status

#### 16.1.1 Device

System information is located at **Status>Device**.

System Information	
Router Name	Mediafast 
Model	Peplink MediaFast 500
Product Code	MFA-500-B
Hardware Revision	2
Serial Number	
Firmware	8.0.0b03 build 2593
PepVPN Version	8.0.0
Modem Support Version	1022 ( <a href="#">Modem Support List</a> )
Host Name	mediafast 
Uptime	54 days 23 hours 7 minutes
System Time	Wed Apr 17 14:08:23 BST 2019
Content Filtering Database	<a href="#">Download (r20180514) Update</a>
Diagnostic Report	<a href="#">Download</a>
Remote Assistance	<a href="#">Turn On</a>

MAC Address	
LAN	10:56: 
WAN 1	10:56: 
WAN 2	10:56: 
WAN 3	10:56: 
WAN 4	10:56: 
WAN 5	10:56: 

System Information	
<b>Router Name</b>	This is the name specified in the <b>Router Name</b> field located at <b>System&gt;Admin Security</b> .
<b>Model</b>	This shows the model name and number of this device.
<b>Hardware Revision</b>	This shows the hardware version of this device.
<b>Serial Number</b>	This shows the serial number of this device.
<b>Firmware</b>	This shows the firmware version this device is currently running.
<b>Uptime</b>	This shows the length of time since the device has been rebooted.
<b>System Time</b>	This shows the current system time.
<b>Diagnostic Report</b>	The <b>Download</b> link is for exporting a diagnostic report file required for system investigation.
<b>Remote Assistance</b>	Click <b>Turn on</b> to enable remote assistance.

The second table shows the MAC address of each LAN/WAN interface connected.

Important Note
If you encounter issues and would like to contact the Peplink Support Team ( <a href="http://www.peplink.com/contact/">http://www.peplink.com/contact/</a> ), please download the diagnostic report file and attach it along with a description of your issue.

## 16.1.2 Active Sessions

Information on active sessions can be found at **Status>Active Sessions>Overview**.

Overview
Search

Session data captured within one minute. [Refresh](#)

Service	Inbound Sessions	Outbound Sessions
<a href="#">DNS</a>	0	51
<a href="#">Facebook</a>	0	1
<a href="#">Google</a>	0	33
<a href="#">Google Ads</a>	0	5
<a href="#">HTTP</a>	0	2
<a href="#">IPsec</a>	0	2
<a href="#">QUIC</a>	0	19
<a href="#">SIP</a>	0	8
<a href="#">SSH</a>	0	3
<a href="#">SSL</a>	1	136
<a href="#">Skype</a>	0	6
<a href="#">Spotify</a>	0	4

Interface	Inbound Sessions	Outbound Sessions
<a href="#">BT</a>	1	360
<a href="#">Virgin Media</a>	0	0
<a href="#">WAN 3</a>	0	0
<a href="#">WAN 4</a>	0	6
<a href="#">[blurred]</a>	0	2
<a href="#">[blurred]</a>	0	0

**Top Clients**

Client IP Address	Total Sessions
<a href="#">10.22.1.100</a>	116
<a href="#">10.22.1.101</a>	90
<a href="#">172.16.17.100</a>	86
<a href="#">10.22.1.102</a>	83
<a href="#">172.16.17.101</a>	73

This screen displays the number of sessions initiated by each application. Click on each service listing for additional information. This screen also indicates the number of sessions initiated by each WAN port. Finally, you can see which clients are initiating the most sessions.

In addition, you can also perform a filtered search for specific sessions. You can filter by subnet, port, protocol, and interface. To perform a search, navigate to **Status>Active Sessions>Search**.

Overview
Search

Session data captured 2 mins ago. [Refresh](#)

IP / Subnet	Source or Destination ▾	<input type="text" value="255.255.255.255 (/32)"/>	
Port	Source or Destination ▾	<input type="text"/>	
Protocol / Service	Spotify ▾		
Interface	<input type="checkbox"/> 1 BT <input type="checkbox"/> 2 Virgin Media <input type="checkbox"/> 3 WAN 3 <input type="checkbox"/> 4 WAN 4 <input type="checkbox"/> 5 Peplink HK Net... <input type="checkbox"/> Mobile Internet <input type="checkbox"/> VPN		
<input type="button" value="Search"/>			

**Outbound**

Protocol	Source IP	Destination IP	Service	Interface	Idle Time
TCP	10.255.255.58827	104.199.64.136:443	SSL/Spotify	BT	00:00:09
TCP	10.255.255.58828	104.199.64.136:443	SSL/Spotify	BT	00:00:09
TCP	10.255.255.58784	35.186.224.47:443	SSL/Spotify	BT	00:00:10
TCP	10.255.255.65369	35.186.224.53:443	SSL/Spotify	BT	00:00:29

Total searched results: 4

**Inbound**

Protocol	Source IP	Destination IP	Service	Interface	Idle Time
No sessions					

Total searched results: 0

**Transit**

Protocol	Source IP	Destination IP	Service	Interface	Idle Time
No sessions					

Total searched results: 0

This **Active Sessions** section displays the active inbound / outbound sessions of each WAN connection on the Peplink Balance. A filter is available to help sort out the active session information. Enter a keyword in the field or check one of the WAN connection boxes for filtering.

### 16.1.3 Client List

The client list table is located at **Status>Client List**. It lists DHCP and online client IP addresses, names (retrieved from the DHCP reservation table or defined by users), current download and upload rate, and

MAC address.

Clients can be imported into the DHCP reservation table by clicking the button on the right. Further update the record after the import by going to **Network>LAN**.

Filter		<input type="checkbox"/> Online Clients Only	<input type="checkbox"/> DHCP Clients Only		
<b>Client List</b>					
IP Address	Name	Download (kbps)	Upload (kbps)	MAC Address	Import
192.168.167.10		0	0	10:00:00:00:00:00	
192.168.167.11	U64-2-1	0	0	00:00:00:00:00:1A	
192.168.167.12	U64-2-2	0	0	10:00:00:00:00:75	

If the PPTP server SpeedFusion™, or AP controller is enabled, you may see the corresponding connection name listed in the **Name** field.

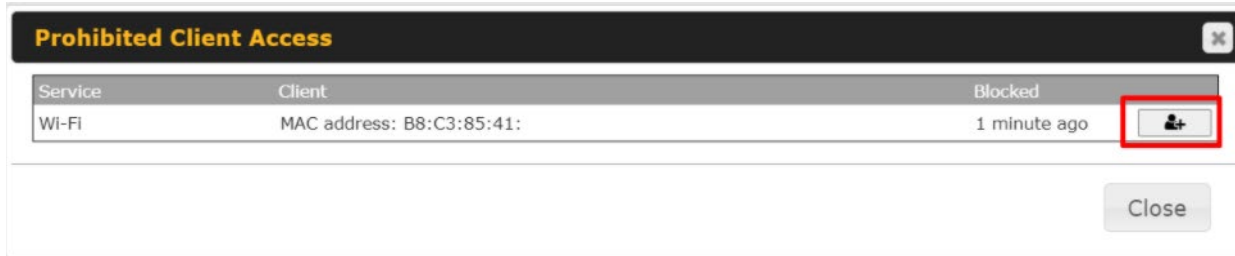
In the client list table, there is a “Ban Client” feature which is used to disconnect the Wi-Fi and Remote User Access clients by clicking the button on the right.

Filter		<input type="checkbox"/> Online Clients Only	<input type="checkbox"/> DHCP Clients Only				
<b>Client List</b>							
IP Address	Name	Download (kbps)	Upload (kbps)	MAC Address	Network Name (SSID)	Signal (dBm)	
		0	0				
		0	0			-37	

There is a blocklist on the same page after you banned the Wi-Fi or Remote User Access clients.

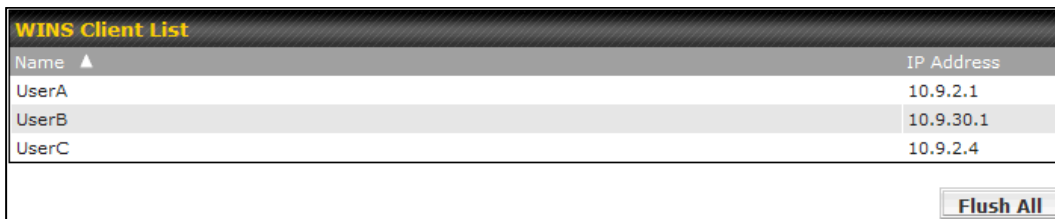
Filter		<input type="checkbox"/> Online Clients Only	<input type="checkbox"/> DHCP Clients Only			
<a href="#">Access restriction</a> in action, some clients are currently banned.						
<b>Client List</b>						
IP Address	Name	Download (kbps)	Upload (kbps)	MAC Address	Network Name (SSID)	Signal (dBm)

You may also unblock the Wi-Fi or Remote User Access clients when the client devices need to reconnect the network by clicking the button on the right.



### 16.1.4 WINS Clients

The WINS client list table is located at **Status>WINS Client**.



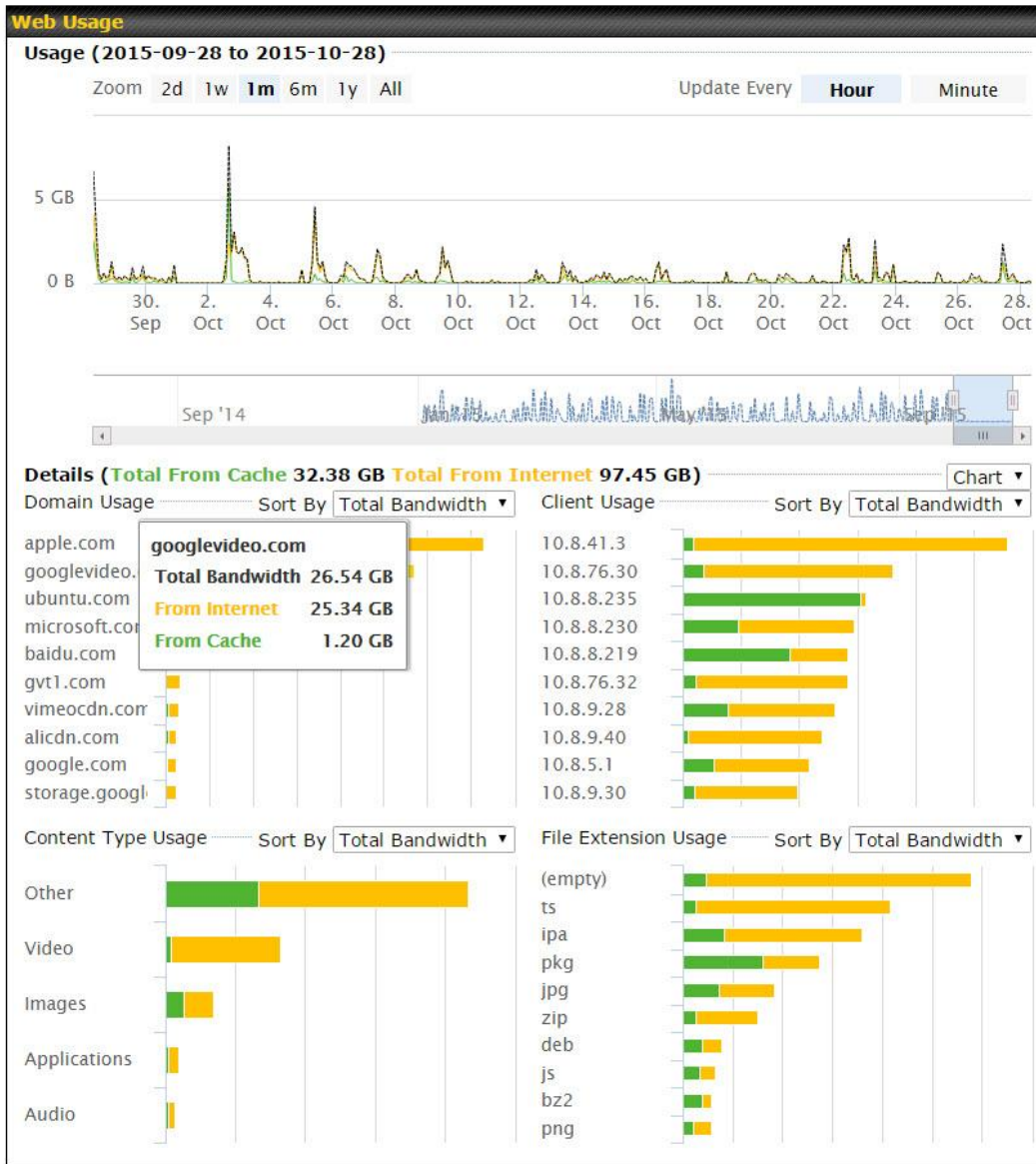
The WINS client table lists the IP addresses and names of WINS clients. This option will only be available when you have enabled the WINS server. The names of clients retrieved will be automatically matched into the Client List (see previous section). Click **Flush All** to flush all WINS client records.

### 16.1.5 OSPF & RIPv2

Information on OSPF and RIPv2 routing setup can be found at **Status>OSPF & RIPv2**.

### 16.1.6 MediaFast

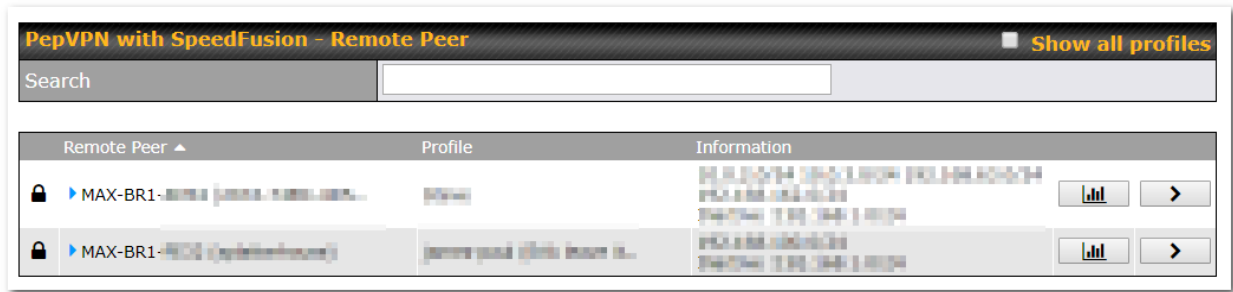
To get details on storage and bandwidth usage, select **Status>MediaFast**.



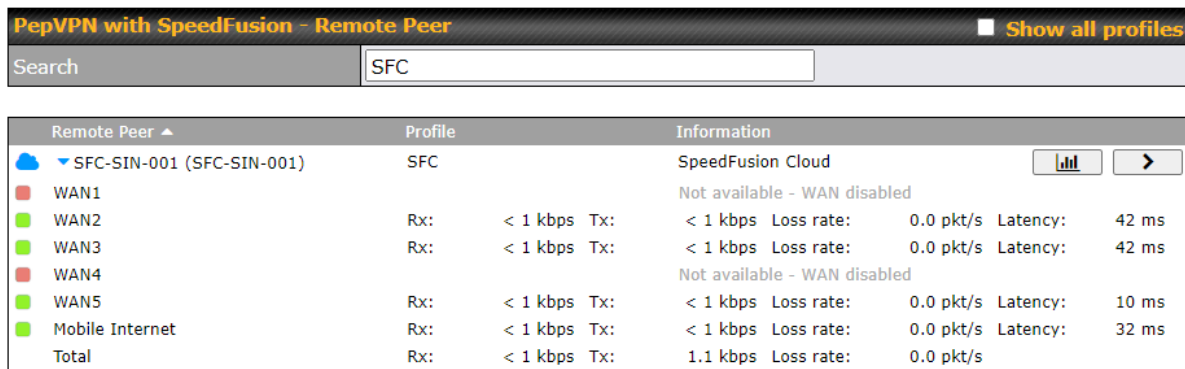
### 16.1.7 PepVPN / SpeedFusion Status

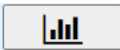
PepVPN/SpeedFusion Status shows the current connection status of each connection profile and is displayed at **Status> PepVPN/SpeedFusion**.

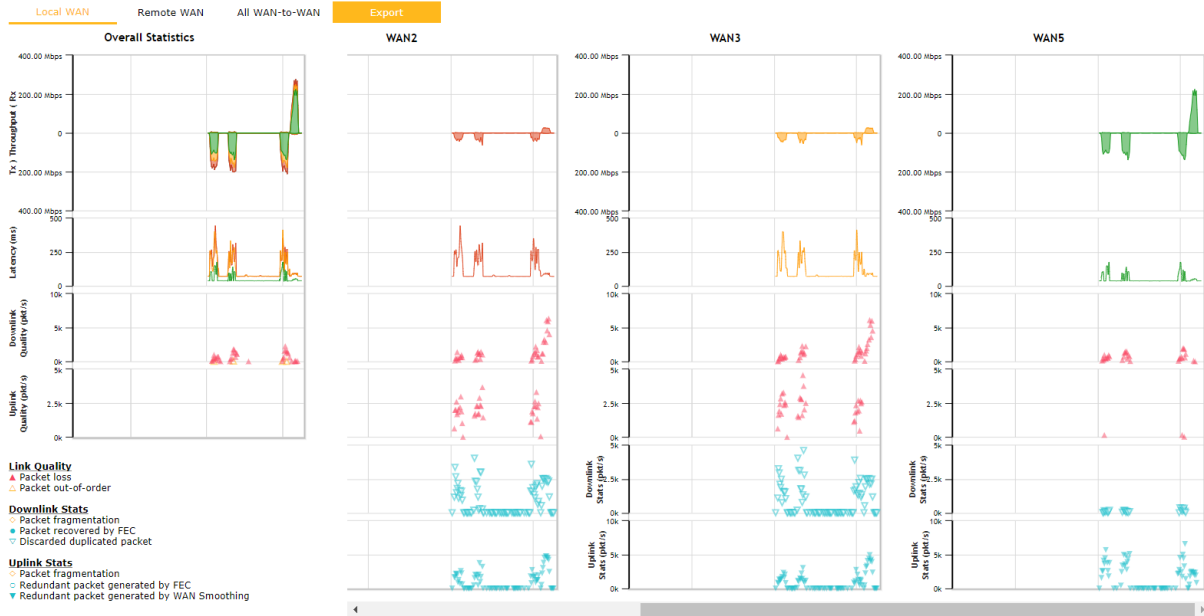





Click on the corresponding peer name to explore the WAN connection(s) status and subnet information of each VPN peer.



Click the  button for PepVPN/SpeedFusion chart displaying real-time throughput, latency, and drop-rate information for each WAN connection.



When pressing the  button for a PepVPN/SpeedFusion Tunnel Bandwidth Test Tool, the following menu will appear:

**PepVPN Details** ✕

**Connection Information** More information

Profile	SFC
Remote ID	SFC-SIN-001
Device Name	SFC-SIN-001
Serial Number	1197-A047-2E3D

**WAN Statistics** 📊

Remote Connections  Show remote connections

WAN Label  WAN Name  IP Address and Port

WAN1	Not available - WAN disabled				
WAN2	Rx: < 1 kbps	Tx: < 1 kbps	Loss rate: 0.0 pkt/s	Latency: 43 ms	
WAN3	Rx: < 1 kbps	Tx: < 1 kbps	Loss rate: 0.0 pkt/s	Latency: 44 ms	
WAN4	Not available - WAN disabled				
WAN5	Rx: < 1 kbps	Tx: < 1 kbps	Loss rate: 0.0 pkt/s	Latency: 10 ms	
Mobile Internet	Rx: < 1 kbps	Tx: < 1 kbps	Loss rate: 0.0 pkt/s	Latency: 42 ms	
Total	Rx: < 1 kbps	Tx: < 1 kbps	Loss rate: 0.0 pkt/s		

**PepVPN Test Configuration** ?

Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> TCP <input type="radio"/> UDP	Start
Streams	4 ▼	
Direction	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Upload <input type="radio"/> Download	
Duration	20 seconds (5 - 600)	

The **connection information** shows the details of the selected PepVPN profile, consisting of the Profile name, **Router ID**, **Router Name** and **Serial Number** of the remote router

Advanced features for the PepVPN profile will also be shown when the **More Information** checkbox is selected.

The **WAN statistics** show information about the local and remote WAN connections (when **show Remote connections**) is selected.

The available details are **WAN Name**, **IP address** and **port** used for the Speedfusion connection. **Rx and Tx rates**, **Loss rate** and **Latency**.

Connections can be temporarily disabled by sliding the switch button next to a WAN connection to the left. The wan-to-wan connection disabled by the switch is temporary and will be re-enabled after 15 minutes without any action.

This can be used when testing the PepVPN speed between two locations to see if there is interference or network congestion between certain WAN connections.

WAN Statistics	
Remote Connections	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Show remote connections
WAN Label	<input checked="" type="radio"/> WAN Name <input type="radio"/> IP Address and Port
<input type="checkbox"/> BT	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN	Rx: < 1 kbps Tx: < 1 kbps Loss rate: 0.0 pkt/s Latency: 17 ms
<input type="checkbox"/> Virgin Media	Not available - WAN disabled

The PepVPN/SpeedFusion test configuration allows us to configure and perform thorough tests. This is usually done after the initial installation of the routers and in case there are problems with aggregation.

PepVPN Test Configuration	
Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> TCP <input type="radio"/> UDP
Streams	4 ▼
Direction	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Upload <input type="radio"/> Download
Duration	20 seconds (5 - 600)
<b>Start</b>	

Press the Start button to perform throughput test according to the configured options.

If TCP is selected, 4 parallel streams will be generated to get the optimal results by default. This can be customized by selecting a different value of streams.

Using more streams will typically get better results if the latency of the tunnel is high.

PepVPN Test Results			
1.0s:	14.6724 Mbps	0 retrans /	323 KB cwnd
2.0s:	15.1620 Mbps	0 retrans /	416 KB cwnd
3.0s:	15.2438 Mbps	0 retrans /	513 KB cwnd
4.0s:	16.2522 Mbps	0 retrans /	609 KB cwnd
5.0s:	14.6811 Mbps	0 retrans /	699 KB cwnd
6.0s:	15.2058 Mbps	0 retrans /	804 KB cwnd
7.0s:	15.7294 Mbps	0 retrans /	935 KB cwnd
8.0s:	15.2053 Mbps	0 retrans /	1024 KB cwnd
9.0s:	15.6881 Mbps	0 retrans /	1045 KB cwnd
10.0s:	14.7147 Mbps	0 retrans /	1045 KB cwnd
--			
Stream 1:	4.0414 Mbps	0 retrans /	254 KB cwnd
Stream 2:	4.2783 Mbps	0 retrans /	253 KB cwnd
Stream 3:	2.8789 Mbps	0 retrans /	285 KB cwnd
Stream 4:	4.1534 Mbps	0 retrans /	253 KB cwnd
--			
Overall:	15.3520 Mbps	0 retrans /	1045 KB cwnd
--			
TEST DONE			

### 16.1.8 Event Log

Event log information is located at **Status>Event Log**.

## Device Event Log

The screenshot shows the 'Device Event Log' section of a Peplink interface. It features a header with 'Device Event Log' and 'ContentHub Event Log' tabs. Below the header, there is a title bar for 'Device Event Log' with a checked 'Auto Refresh' checkbox. The main area contains a list of events with the following details:

Timestamp	Event Description
Apr 17 14:54:52	System: [Detailed description]
Apr 17 14:39:44	System: [Detailed description]
Apr 17 09:12:42	System: [Detailed description]
Apr 17 09:07:33	System: [Detailed description]
Apr 16 10:01:13	System: [Detailed description]
Apr 16 10:00:23	System: [Detailed description]
Apr 16 09:59:04	System: [Detailed description]
Apr 16 09:58:57	System: [Detailed description]
Apr 16 09:57:10	System: [Detailed description]
Apr 16 09:57:04	System: [Detailed description]
Apr 16 09:56:16	System: [Detailed description]
Apr 16 09:56:15	System: [Detailed description]
Apr 16 09:56:15	System: [Detailed description]
Apr 16 09:56:13	System: [Detailed description]
Apr 16 09:54:41	System: [Detailed description]
Apr 16 09:50:28	System: [Detailed description]
Apr 16 09:50:28	System: [Detailed description]

A 'Clear Log' button is located at the bottom left of the log area.

The log section displays a list of events that have taken place on the Peplink Balance unit. Check **Auto Refresh** to refresh log entries automatically. Click the **Clear Log** button to clear the log.

## IPsec Event Log

The screenshot shows the 'IPsec VPN Event Log' section of a Peplink interface. It features a header with 'Device Event Log' and 'IPsec VPN Event Log' tabs. Below the header, there is a title bar for 'IPsec VPN Event Log' with a checked 'Auto Refresh' checkbox. The main area contains a list of events with the following details:

Timestamp	Event Description
Dec 30 08:32:26	IPsec: Amazon Singapore/1x1 - Initiating Main Mode connection...
Dec 30 08:31:46	IPsec: Amazon Singapore/1x1 - Initiating Main Mode connection...
Sep 04 01:01:29	IPsec: Amazon Singapore/1x1 - Initiating Main Mode connection...

The log concludes with 'End of log' at the bottom right.

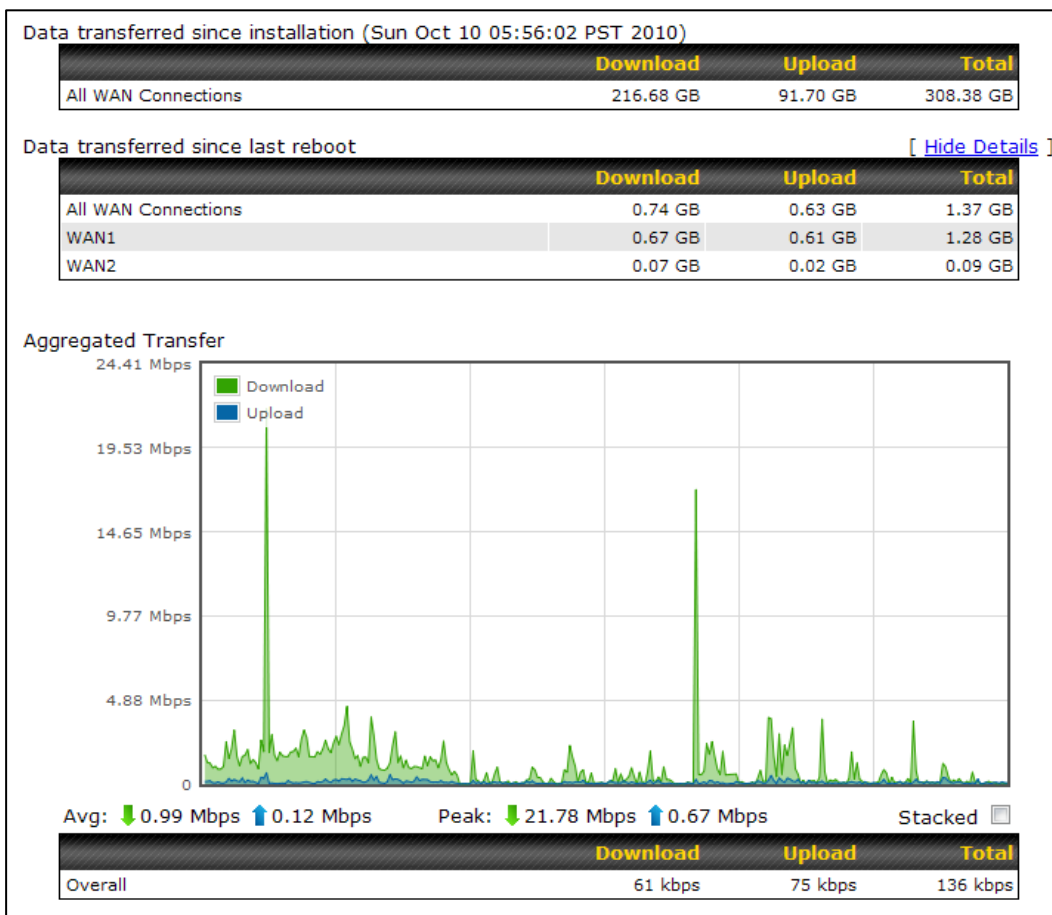
This section displays a list of events that have taken place within an IPsec VPN connection. Check the box next to **Auto Refresh** and the log will be refreshed automatically. For an AP event log, navigate to **AP>Info**.

## 16.2 Bandwidth

This section shows the bandwidth usage statistics, located at **Status>Bandwidth**. Bandwidth usage at the LAN while the device is switched off (e.g., LAN bypass) is neither recorded nor shown.

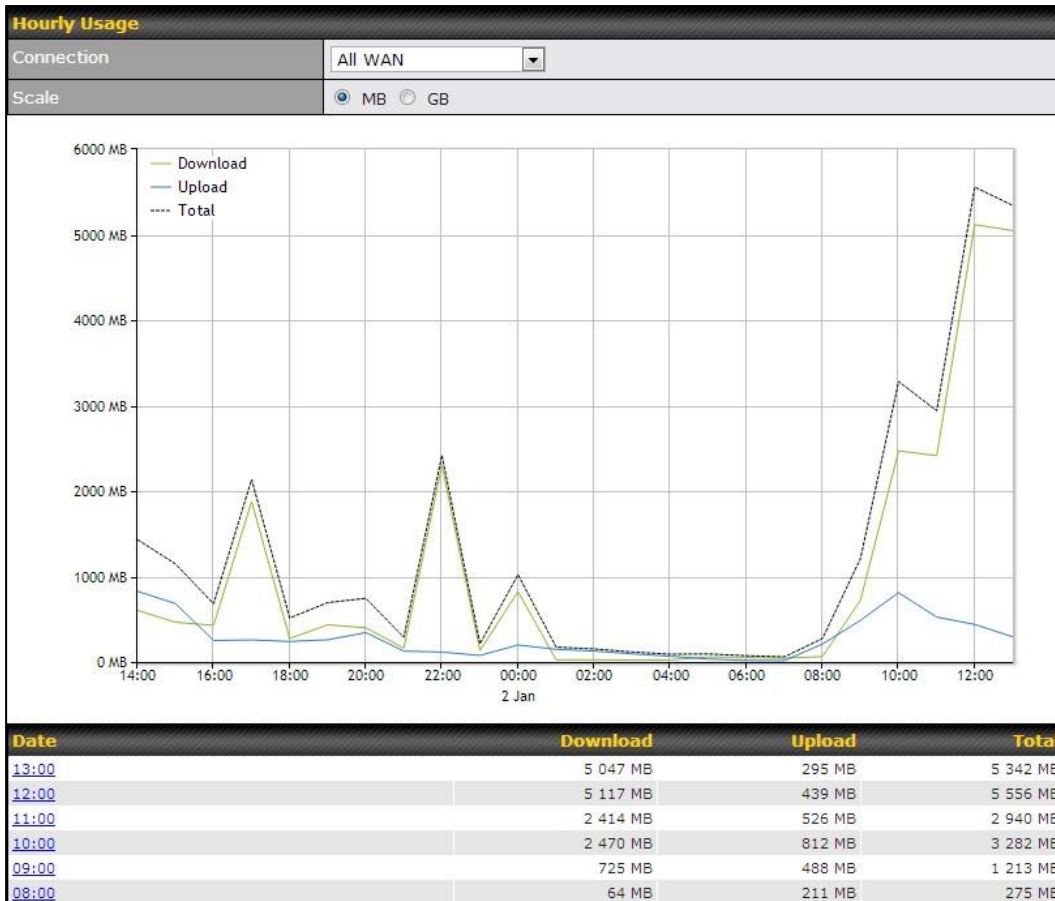
### 16.2.1 Real-Time

The **Data transferred since installation** table indicates how much network traffic has been processed by the device since the first bootup. The **Data transferred since last reboot** table indicates how much network traffic has been processed by the device since the last bootup.



## 16.2.2 Hourly

This page shows the hourly bandwidth usage for all WAN connections, with the option of viewing each individual connection. Select the desired connection to check from the drop-down menu.



## 16.2.3 Daily

This page shows the daily bandwidth usage for all WAN connections, with the option of viewing each individual connection.

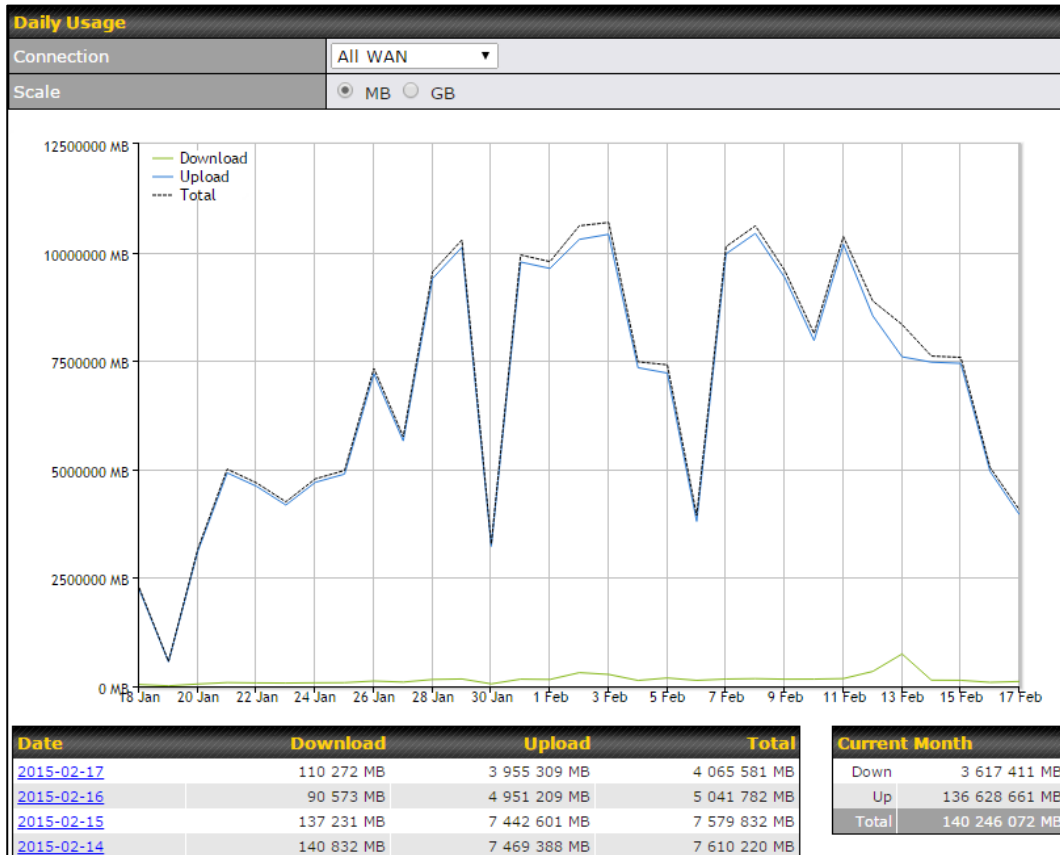
Select the connection to check from the drop-down menu. If you have enabled the **Bandwidth Monitoring** feature as shown in **Section 13.4**, the **Current Billing Cycle** table for that WAN connection will be displayed.

Click on a date to view the client bandwidth usage of that specific date. This feature is not available if you have selected to view the bandwidth usage of only a particular WAN connection. The scale of the graph can be set to display megabytes (**MB**) or gigabytes (**GB**).





Status



Click on a specific date to receive a breakdown of all client usage for that date.

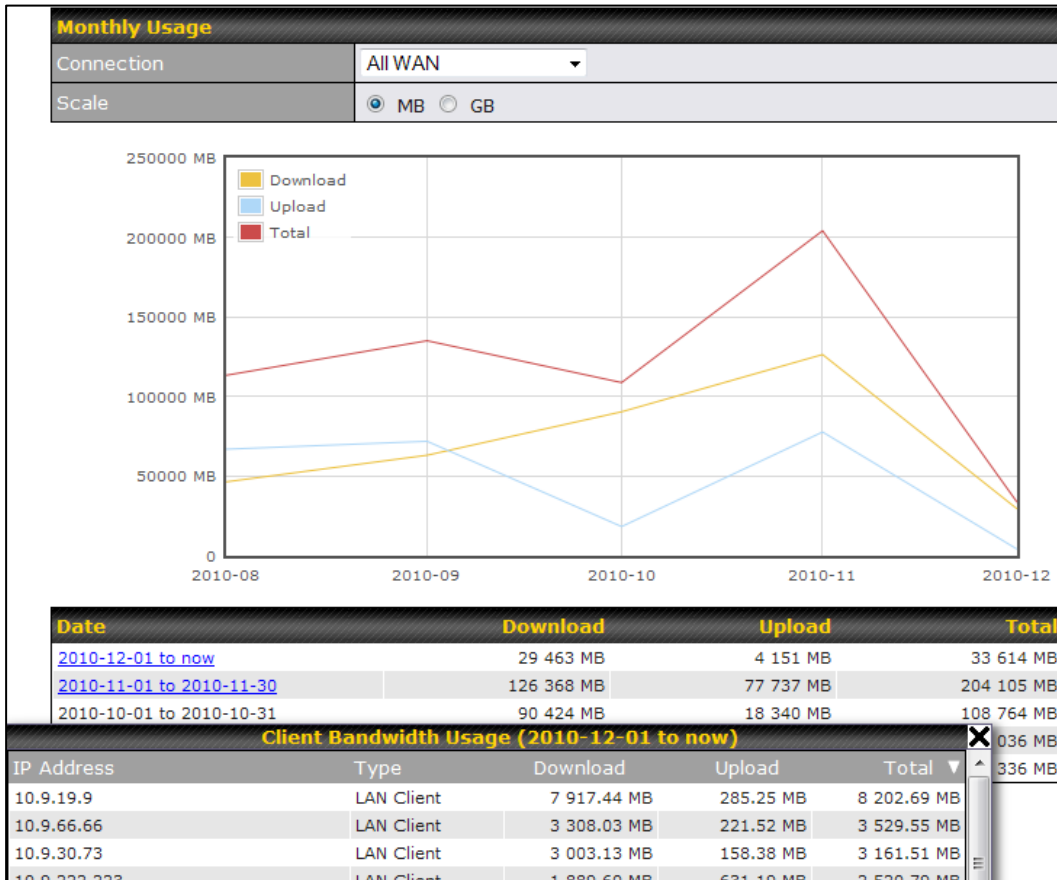
**Client Bandwidth Usage (2015-02-15)**

IP Address	Type	Download	Upload	Total
192.168.168.15	LAN Client	7 972.69 MB	1 217 122.81 MB	1 225 095.50 MB
192.168.168.14	LAN Client	7 432.25 MB	1 197 380.53 MB	1 204 812.79 MB
192.168.168.22	LAN Client	5 676.90 MB	617 109.49 MB	622 786.39 MB
192.168.168.21	LAN Client	5 693.38 MB	615 629.07 MB	621 322.46 MB
192.168.168.12	LAN Client	2 156.79 MB	339 779.46 MB	341 936.25 MB
192.168.168.16	LAN Client	2 107.10 MB	333 980.14 MB	336 087.23 MB
192.168.168.18	LAN Client	16.75 MB	9.50 MB	26.25 MB
192.168.167.14	LAN Client	4.74 MB	8.35 MB	13.09 MB
192.168.167.13	LAN Client	4.73 MB	8.35 MB	13.08 MB
192.168.168.19	LAN Client	0.02 MB	0.02 MB	0.03 MB
192.168.168.20	LAN Client	0.00 MB	0.00 MB	0.00 MB
192.168.168.11	LAN Client	0.00 MB	0.00 MB	0.00 MB

## 16.2.4 Monthly

This page shows the monthly bandwidth usage for each WAN connection. If you have enabled **Bandwidth Monitoring** feature as shown in **Section 13.4**, you can check the usage of each particular connection and view the information by **Billing Cycle** or by **Calendar Month**.

Click the first two rows to view the client bandwidth usage in the last two months. This feature is not available if you have chosen to view the bandwidth of an individual WAN connection. The scale of the graph can be set to display megabytes (**MB**) or gigabytes (**GB**).



Click on a specific month to receive a breakdown of all client usage for that month.

## Appendix

### Appendix A. Restoration of Factory Defaults

To restore the factory default settings on a Peplink Balance unit, perform the following:

**For Balance models with a reset button:**

1. Locate the reset button on the Peplink Balance unit.
2. With a paperclip, press and keep the reset button pressed.

Hold for 5-10 seconds for admin password reset (Note: The LED status light blinks in RED 2 times and release the button, green status light starts blinking)

Hold for approximately 20 seconds for factory reset (Note: The LED status light blinks in RED 3 times and release the button, all WAN/LAN port lights start blinking)

After the Peplink Balance router finishes rebooting, the factory default settings will be restored.

### For Balance/MediaFast models with an LCD menu:

- Use the buttons on the front panel to control the LCD menu to go to **Maintenance>Factory Defaults**, and then choose **Yes** to confirm.

Afterwards, the factory default settings will be restored.

### Important Note

All previous configurations and bandwidth usage data will be lost after restoring factory default settings. Regular backup of configuration settings is strongly recommended.

## Appendix B. Routing under DHCP, Static IP, and PPPoE

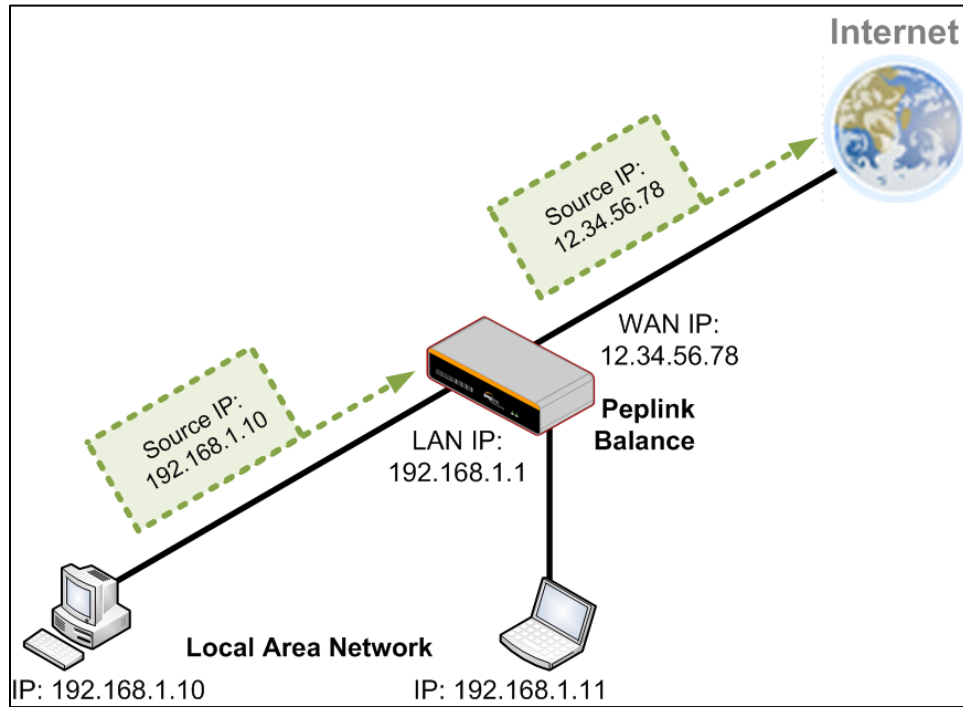
The information in this appendix applies only to situations where the Peplink Balance operates a WAN connection under DHCP, Static IP, or PPPoE.

### B.1 Routing Via Network Address Translation (NAT)

When the Peplink Balance is operating under NAT mode, the source IP addresses of outgoing IP packets are translated to the WAN IP address of the Peplink Balance. With NAT, all LAN devices share the same WAN IP address to access the Internet (i.e., the WAN IP address of the Peplink Balance).

Operating the Peplink Balance in NAT mode requires only one WAN (Internet) IP address. In addition, operating in NAT mode also has security advantages because LAN devices are hidden behind the Peplink Balance. They are not directly accessible from the Internet and hence less vulnerable to attacks.

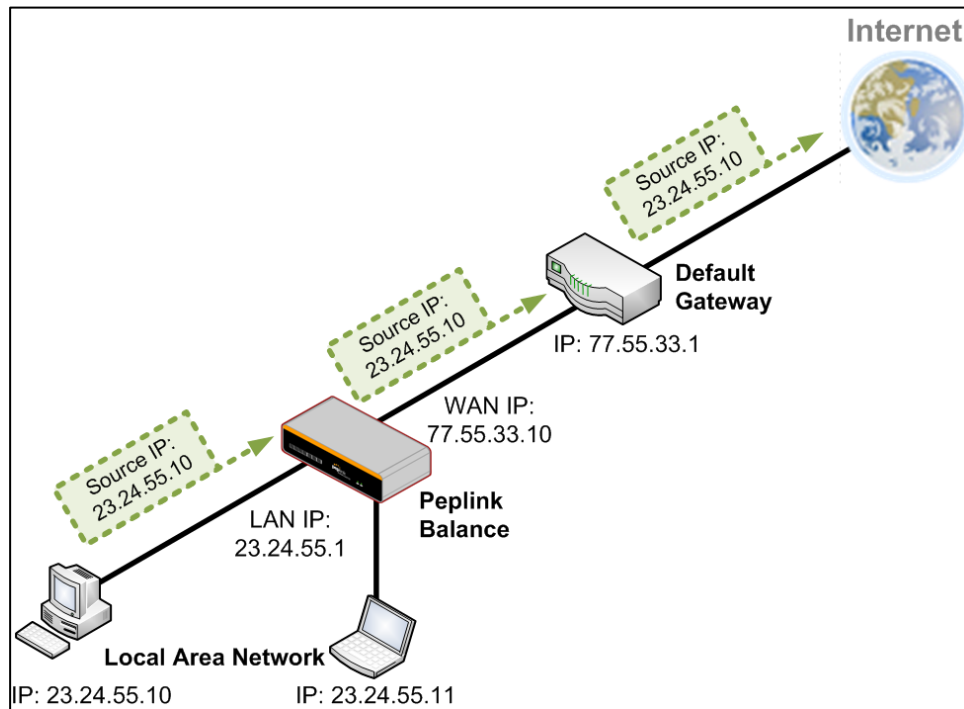
The following figure shows the packet flow in NAT mode:



## B.2 Routing Via IP Forwarding

When the Peplink Balance is operating under IP forwarding mode, the IP addresses of IP packets are unchanged; the Peplink Balance forwards both inbound and outbound IP packets without changing their IP addresses.

The following figure shows the packet flow in IP forwarding mode:



## Appendix C. Case Studies

### MPLS Alternative

Our SpeedFusion enabled routers can be used to bond multiple low-cost/commodity Internet connections to replace an expensive managed business Internet connection, private leased line, MPLS, and frame relay without sacrificing reliability and availability.

Below are typical deployments for using our Balance routers to replace expensive MPLS connections with commodity connections, such as ADSL, 3G, and 4G LTE links.

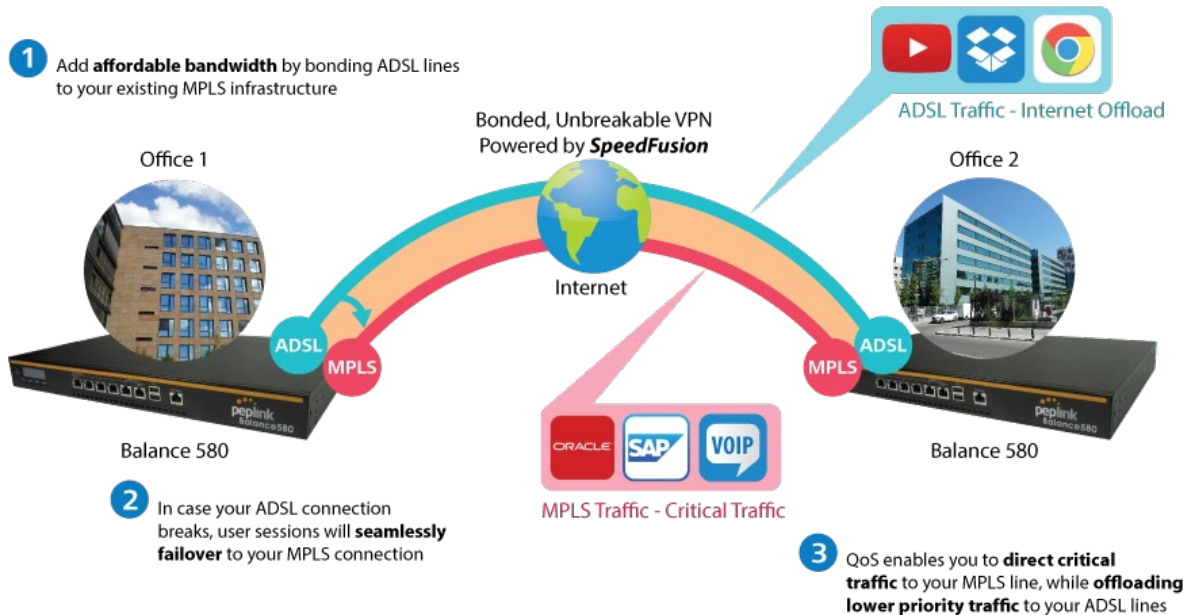
Special features of Balance 580: have high availability capability

Special features of Balance 2500: have high availability capability and capable of connecting to optical fiber based LAN through SFP+ connector

Our WAN-bonding routers which comprise our Balance series and MediaFast series are capable of connecting multiple devices, and end users' networks to the Internet through multiple Internet connections.

Our MediaFast series routers have been helping students at many education institutions to enjoy uninterrupted learning

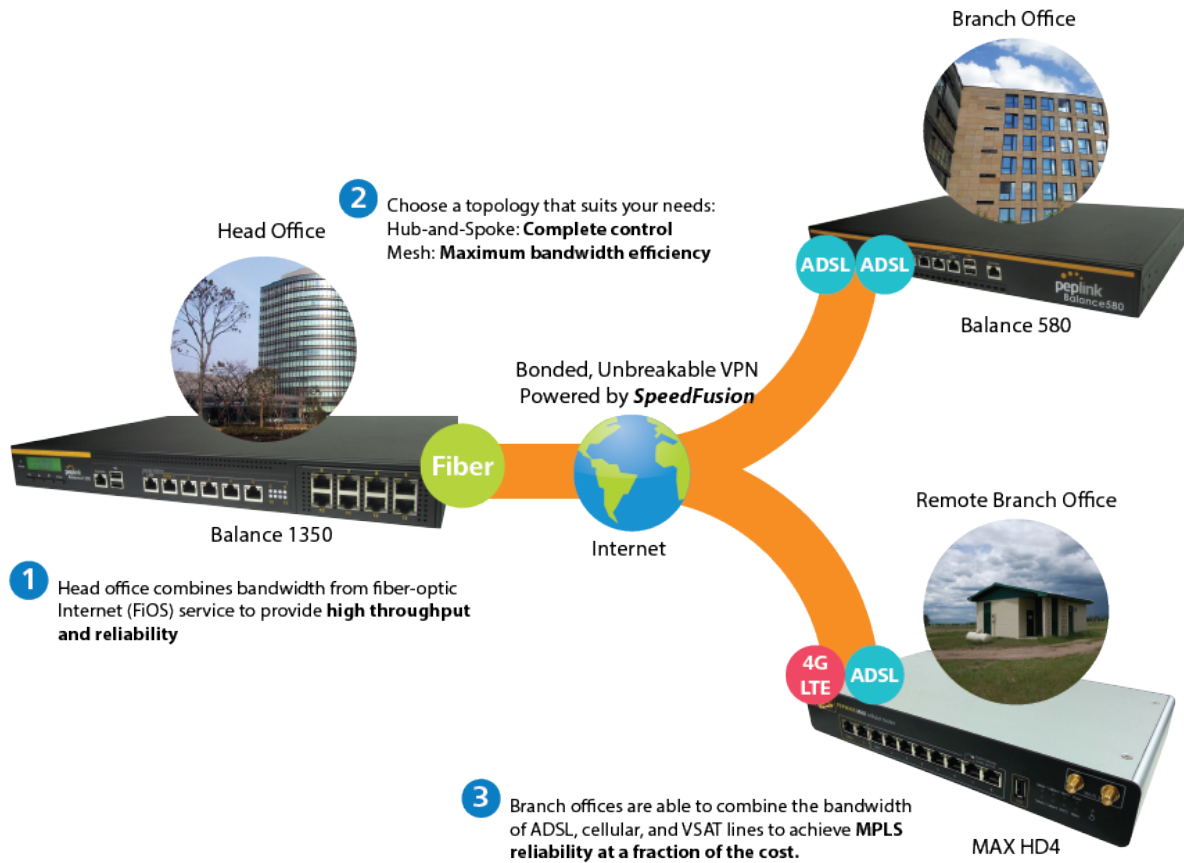
## Option 1: MPLS Supplement



Affordably increase your bandwidth by adding commodity ADSL links to your MPLS connection. SpeedFusion technology bonds all your connections together, enabling session-persistent, user-transparent hot failover. QoS support, bandwidth control, and traffic prioritization gives you total control over your network.

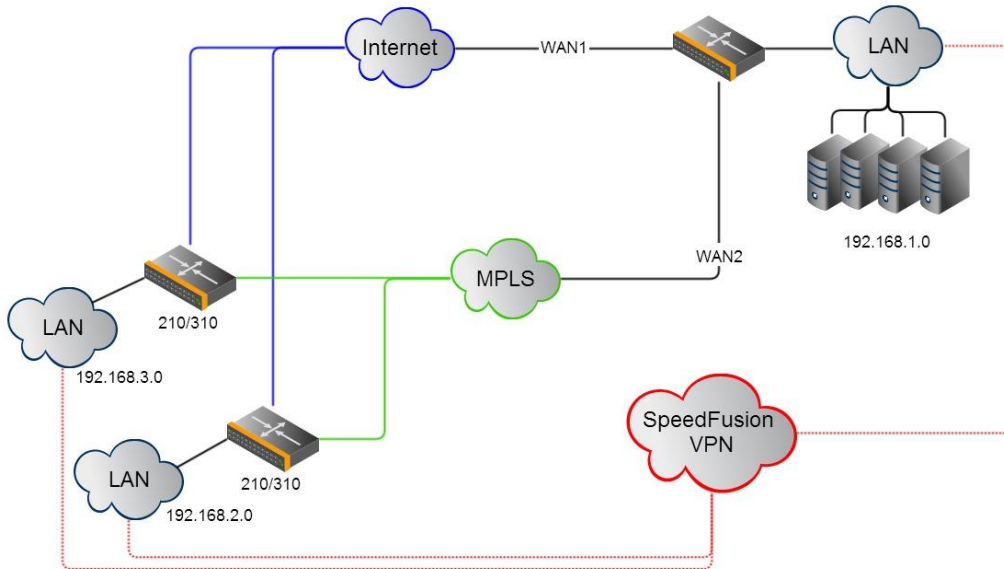


## Option 2: MPLS Alternative



Achieve faster speeds and greater reliability while paying only 20% of MPLS costs by connecting multiple ADSL, 3G, and 4G LTE links. Choose a topology that suits your requirements: a hub-and-spoke topology maximizes control over your network, while a meshed topology can reduce your bandwidth overhead by enabling your devices to form Unbreakable VPN connections directly with each other.

Here is an example of to supplement of existing Multi-Office MPLS network with DSL bonding through SpeedFusion using a Balance 580 at the headquarters and Balance 210/310 at branch offices.



#### Environment:

- This organization has one head office with two branch offices, with most of the crucial information stored in a server room at the head office.
- They are connecting the offices together using a managed MPLS Solution. However, the MPLS Network is operating at capacity and upgrading the links is cost prohibitive.
- As the organization grows, it needs a cost-efficient way to add more bandwidth to its wide area network.
- Internet access at the remote sites is sent via a web proxy at head office for corporate web filtering compliance.

#### Requirement:

- User sessions need to remain uninterrupted
- More bandwidth is required at the head office location for direct internet access.

#### Recommended Solution:

- Form a SpeedFusion tunnel between the branch offices and head office to bond the MPLS and additional DSL lines.
- SpeedFusion allows for hot failover, maintaining a persistent session while switching connections.

- The DSLs at head office can be used for direct internet access providing lots of cheap internet bandwidth.
- Head office can use outbound policies to send internet traffic out over the DSLs and only use the MPLS connection for speedfusion, freeing up bandwidth.

**Devices Deployed:** Balance 210, Balance 310, Balance 580

## Harrington Industrial Plastics



### Overview

Harrington Plastics, the US's largest industrial plastics distributor, was looking to upgrade its network equipment. Harrington's team came across Peplink and started thinking about MPLS alternatives. By choosing Peplink, they saved a fortune on upgrades and ended up with yearly savings of up to \$100,000.

### Requirements

- Zero network outages
- Flexible resilience options
- Cost-effective solution

### Solution

- Peplink Balance 1350
- Peplink Balance 380

- Unbreakable VPN

## Benefits

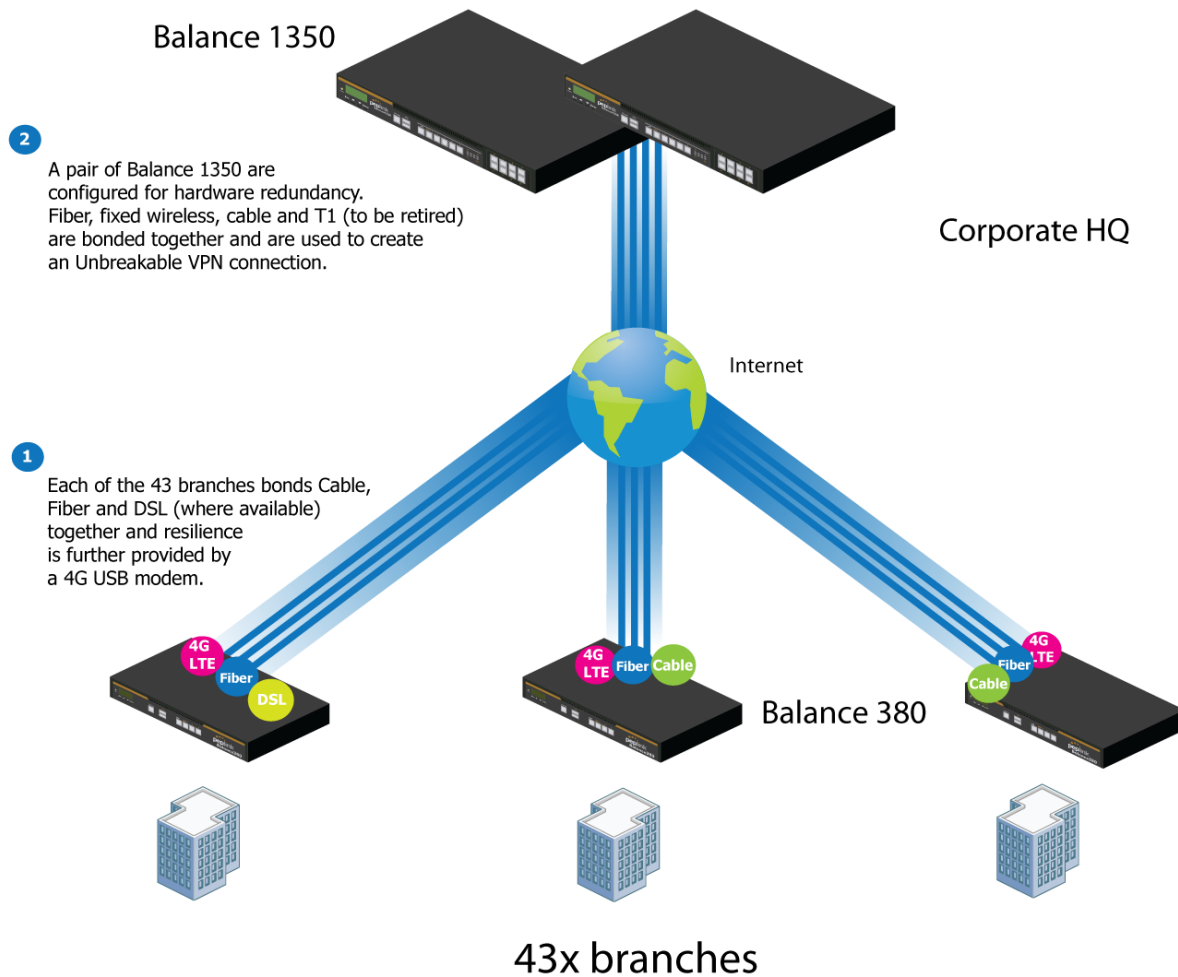
- Extreme savings of \$100,000 per year
- 4x the bandwidth
- Seamless hardware failover
- Highly available network due to WAN diversity
- Highly cost-effective compared to competing solutions
- Easy resilience achieved by adding 4G USB modems

## Time For An Upgrade

Harrington Industrial Plastics decided it was time to upgrade its network equipment. Its existing solution used redundant MPLS for site-to-site traffic and broadband connections for Internet access. Harrington is the US's largest distributor of industrial plastics piping, serving all industries with corrosive and high-purity applications. It requires peak performance at all times in order to serve its large customer base and 43 busy branches.

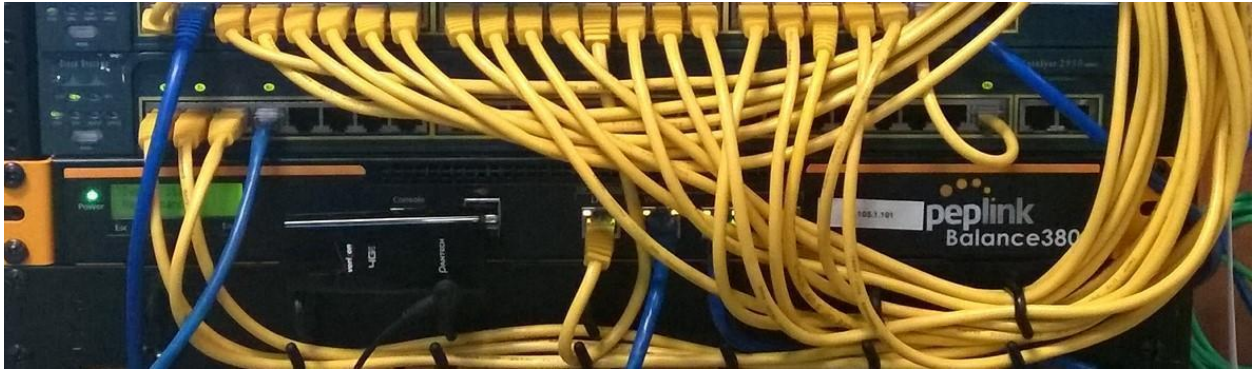
## Quick Deployment and Unbreakable Connectivity

In evaluating an upgrade to its network infrastructure, it was only natural that Harrington settled on the best in the industry — Peplink. Peplink partner Frontier Computer Corporation was chosen to help design and deploy the solution. Since Peplink gear is so easy to configure and install, Harrington was able to design, prototype and roll out the entire solution to the corporate headquarters and all 43 branches within just one year.



The corporate office houses a pair of redundant Balance 1350s for hardware resilience. Served by 4 separate links from multiple service providers, the network's chance of an outage is practically zero. All 43 branches are now equipped with a fleet of Balance 380s, bonding a combination of DSL, cable and fiber-optic links together with an additional 4G USB modem for added resilience. These work together to create an Unbreakable VPN connection to the Balance 1350s at the corporate office, connecting the final dot.

**Dependable, Resilient Networking that's also Very Budget-friendly**



Harrington Industrial Plastics couldn't be happier. They now benefit from an extremely reliable and cost-effective network. Supplying additional resilience is as easy as plugging in a 4G USB modem. Where the MPLS 768kb deployed previously had cost them \$192000 a year for all 40 sites, their new solution is now only costing them \$92000. Their total bandwidth has been bumped from 36 Mbps to 138 Mbps.

## PLUSS

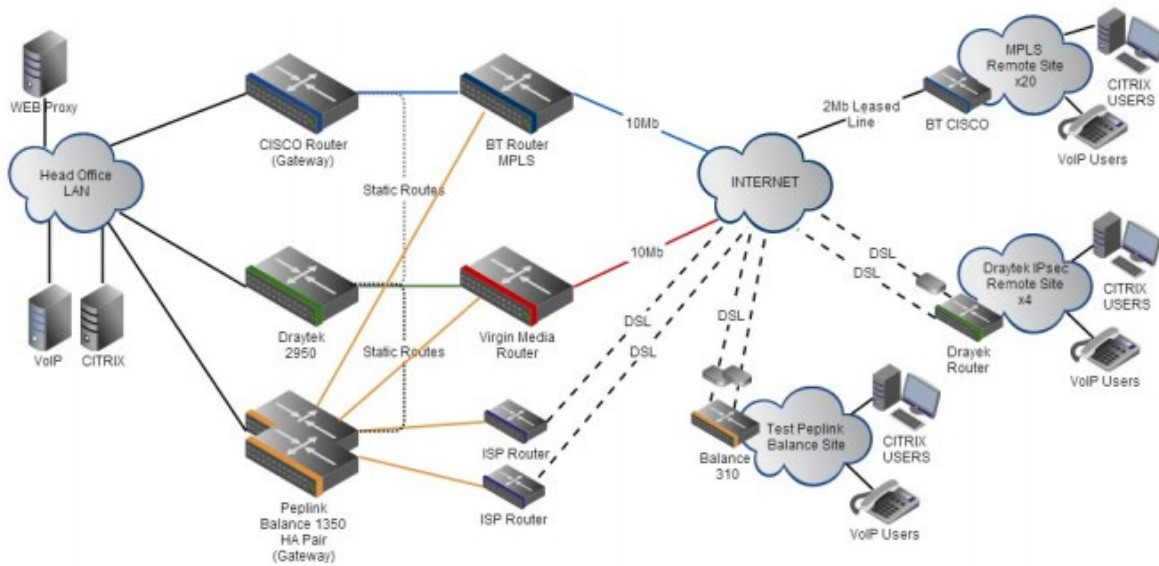
Peplink + Citrix + VoIP Adds Up to Fast, Cost-Effective WAN for Pluss

A Peplink customer since 2006, Pluss is a social enterprise that each year makes gainful employment a reality for more than 5000 disabled and disadvantaged UK citizens. With 37 locations and 300+ active users, Pluss makes heavy use of its WAN infrastructure, which until recently was built on managed MPLS lines.

Hoping to cut expenses and, if possible, boost performance at the same time, Steve Taylor, IT Manager at Pluss, set out to find a solution that would allow Pluss to replace costly MPLS service with a commodity alternative, such as DSL or EFM.

Steve found the solution Pluss needed in Peplink products, especially the Balance series of high-performance enterprise routers and SpeedFusion bonding technology. Pluss now powers its entire WAN infrastructure with simple-to-install, highly reliable, and cost-effective Peplink gear, which allows it to

aggregate DSL and other commodity connections and replace expensive leased lines.



## Colégio Next - Enabling eLearning



Colégio Next, a recognized Apple Distinguished School - deploys over 500 iPads to its 600 students as a teaching and learning tool.

Despite being equipped with iPads, teachers and students alike were not making use of them. The reason for this was because of the slow network access speeds. Apps would not download and course contents were inaccessible. Often, having more than a couple students connected to the same Wi-Fi access point

was enough to bring it to its knees.

Colégio Next needed a unique solution, so they contacted Peplink.

## Requirements

- Solve network congestion problem caused by 600 students over rural Internet connections
- Wi-Fi that can handle 50+ users per classroom
- An affordable network infrastructure that can provide simultaneous access to media-rich educational content

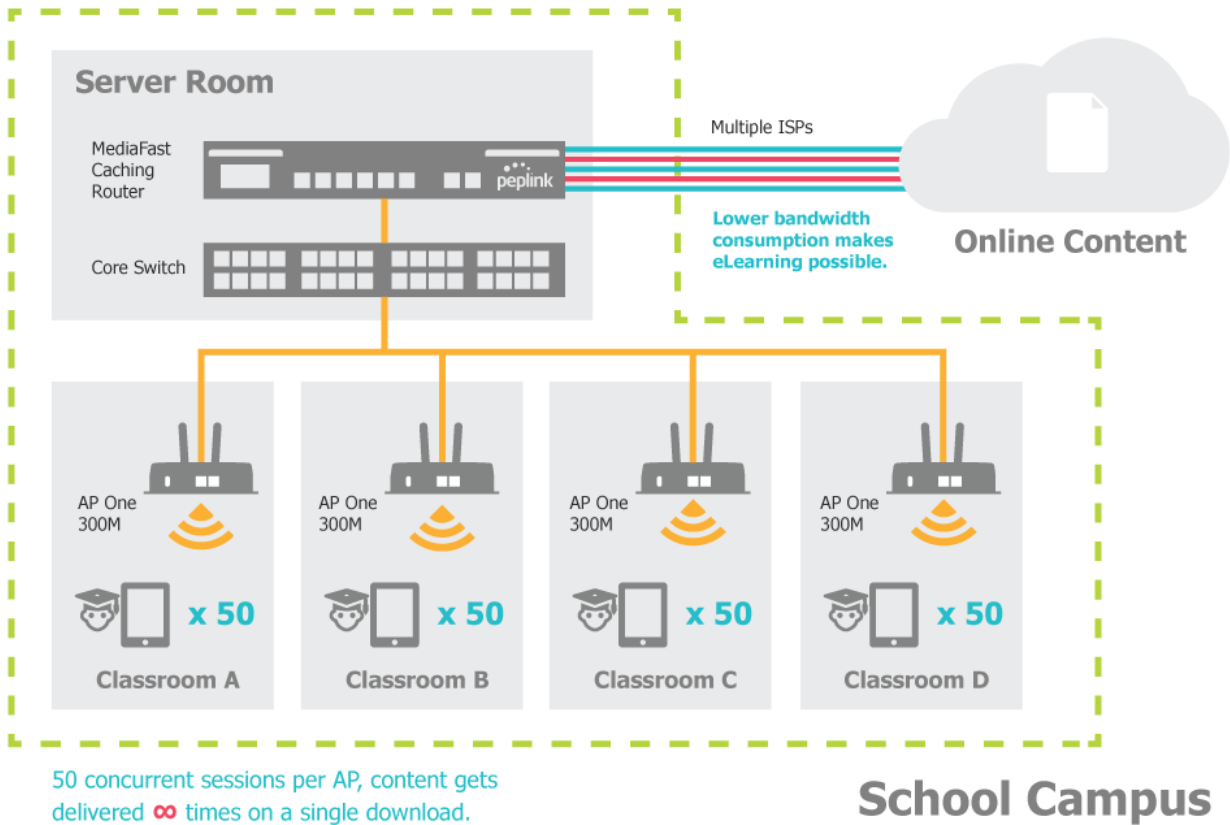
## Solution

- Peplink MediaFast
- Multi-WAN Content-caching router, tailor-made for Education networking.
- AP One 300M
- Enterprise grade AP, 5GHz Wi-Fi, up to 60 concurrent users.

## Benefits

- Instant, simultaneous access to media-rich educational content for 500+ iPads
- Wi-Fi connection stability for 50+ users per classroom, not achievable by other tested equipment
- Teachers, students and guests can be assigned access priority to available bandwidth, further preventing congestion
- iOS updates (often 2GB size) no longer congest the network as they are downloaded only once, cached on the MediaFast and then distributed to all iOS devices
- AP Controller makes MAC Address Filtering easy. Students are assigned to designated APs by their devices' MAC Address in order to prevent saturating any single AP.
- Flawless iPad AirPlay mirroring at all times
- iPads are used all day, reaching their full potential with a fast and stable network all the time
- Students are far more engaged and teachers rely on their iPads all day





50 concurrent sessions per AP, content gets delivered ∞ times on a single download.

### School Campus

## Performance Optimization

### Scenario

In this scenario, email and web browsing are the two main Internet services used by LAN users.

The mail server is external to the network. The connections are ADSL (WAN1, with slow uplink and fast downlink) and Metro Ethernet (WAN2, symmetric).

### Solution

For optimal performance with this configuration, individually set the WAN load balance according to the characteristics of each service.

- Web browsing mainly downloads data; sending emails mainly consumes upload bandwidth.
- Both connections offer good download speeds; WAN2 offers good upload speeds.
- Define WAN1 and WAN2's inbound and outbound bandwidths to be 30M/2M and 50M/50M, respectively. This will ensure that outbound traffic is more likely to be routed through WAN2.
- For HTTP, set the weight to 3:4.
- For SMTP, set the weight to 1:8, such that users will have a greater chance to be routed via WAN2 when sending email.

## Maintaining the Same IP Address Throughout a Session

### Scenario

Some IP address-sensitive websites (for example, Internet banking) use both client IP address and cookie matching for session identification. Since load balancing uses different IP addresses, the session is dropped when a mismatched IP is detected, resulting in frequent interruptions while visiting such sites.

### Solution

Make use of the persistence functionality of the Peplink Balance. With persistence configured and the **By Destination** option selected, the Peplink Balance will use a consistent WAN connection for source-destination pairs of IP addresses, preventing sessions from being dropped.

With persistence configured and the option **By Source** is selected, the Peplink Balance uses a consistent WAN connection for same-source IP addresses. This option offers higher application compatibility but may inhibit the load balancing function unless there are many clients using the Internet.

### Settings

Set persistence in at **Advanced>Outbound Policy**.

Click **Add Rule**, select **HTTP** (TCP port 80) for web service, and select **Persistence**. Click **Save** and then **Apply Changes**, located at the top right corner, to complete the process.

**Add a New Custom Rule** ✖

Service Name *	HTTP Persistence
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Source	Any
Destination	Any
Protocol	TCP ← HTTP
Port *	Single Port Port: 80
Algorithm	Persistence
Persistence Mode	<input type="radio"/> By Source <input checked="" type="radio"/> By Destination
Load Distribution	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Auto <input type="radio"/> Custom
Terminate Sessions on Link Recovery	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable

**Tip**

A network administrator can use the traceroute utility to manually analyze the connection path of a particular WAN connection.

## Bypassing the Firewall to Access Hosts on LAN

### Scenario

There are times when remote access to computers on the LAN is desirable; for example, when hosting web sites, online businesses, FTP download and upload areas, etc. In such cases, it may be appropriate to create an inbound NAT mapping for the network to allow some hosts on the LAN to be accessible from outside of the firewall.

### Solution

The web admin interface can be used to add an inbound NAT mapping to a host and to bind the host to the WAN connection(s) of your choice. To begin, navigate to **Network>NAT Mappings**.

In this example, the host with an IP address of 192.168.1.102 is bound to 10.90.0.75 of WAN1:

LAN Client(s) ?	IP Address ▾
Address ?	192.168.1.102
Inbound Mappings ?	<b>Connection / Inbound IP Address(es)</b>
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN 1 <span style="float: right;"><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 10.90.0.75 (Interface IP)</span>
	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2
	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3
	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4
	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 5
	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 6
	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 7
<input type="checkbox"/> Mobile Internet	
Outbound Mappings ?	<b>Connection / Outbound IP Address</b>
	WAN 1 <span style="float: right;">10.90.0.75 (Interface IP) ▾</span>
	WAN 2 <span style="float: right;">10.90.0.76 (Interface IP) ▾</span>
	WAN 3 <span style="float: right;">Interface IP ▾</span>
	WAN 4 <span style="float: right;">Interface IP ▾</span>
	WAN 5 <span style="float: right;">Interface IP ▾</span>
	WAN 6 <span style="float: right;">Interface IP ▾</span>
	WAN 7 <span style="float: right;">Interface IP ▾</span>
Mobile Internet <span style="float: right;">Interface IP ▾</span>	

Click **Save** and then **Apply Changes**, located at the top right corner, to complete the process.

## Inbound Access Restriction

### Scenario

A firewall is required in order to protect the network from potential hacker attacks and other Internet security threats.

### Solution

Firewall functionality is built into the Peplink Balance. By default, inbound access is unrestricted. Enabling a basic level of protection involves setting up firewall rules.

For example, in order to protect your private network from external access, you can set up a firewall rule between the Internet and your private network. To do so, navigate to **Network>Firewall>Access Rules**. Then click the **Add Rule** button in the **Inbound Firewall Rules** table and change the settings according to the following screenshot:

**Add a New Inbound Firewall Rule**
✕

New Firewall Rule	
Rule Name	Inbound Firewall Rule Exce
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
WAN Connection	<span>?</span> Any ▾
Protocol	<span>?</span> TCP ▾ ← HTTP ▾
Source	<span>?</span> Any Address ▾ Any Port ▾
Destination	<span>?</span> Any Address ▾ Single Port ▾ Port: 80
Action	<span>?</span> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Allow <input type="radio"/> Deny
Event Logging	<span>?</span> <input type="checkbox"/> Enable

After the fields have been entered as in the screenshot, click **Save** to add the rule. Afterwards, change the default inbound rule to **Deny** by clicking the **default** rule in the **Inbound Firewall Rules** table. Click **Apply Changes** on the top right corner to complete the process.

## Outbound Access Restriction

### Scenario

For security reasons, it may be appropriate to restrict outbound access. For example, you may want to prevent LAN users from using ftp to transfer files to and from the Internet. This can easily be achieved by setting up an outbound firewall rule with the Peplink Balance.

### Solution

To setup a firewall between the Internet and private network for outbound access, navigate to **Network>Firewall>Access Rules**. Click the **Add Rule** button in the **Outbound Firewall Rules** table, and then adjust settings according the screenshot:

**Add a New Outbound Firewall Rule**
✕

**New Firewall Rule**

Rule Name	<input type="text" value="No FTP access"/>
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Protocol	<input style="font-size: 0.8em; vertical-align: middle;" type="button" value="?"/> <span style="margin-left: 5px;">TCP</span> <span style="margin-left: 10px;">←</span> <span style="margin-left: 10px;">FTP</span>
Source	<input style="font-size: 0.8em; vertical-align: middle;" type="button" value="?"/> <span style="margin-left: 5px;">Any Address</span> <span style="margin-left: 5px;">Any Port</span>
Destination	<input style="font-size: 0.8em; vertical-align: middle;" type="button" value="?"/> <span style="margin-left: 5px;">Any Address</span> <span style="margin-left: 5px;">Single Port</span> <span style="margin-left: 5px;">Port: 21</span>
Action	<input style="font-size: 0.8em; vertical-align: middle;" type="button" value="?"/> <span style="margin-left: 5px;"> <input type="radio"/> Allow           <input checked="" type="radio"/> Deny         </span>
Event Logging	<input style="font-size: 0.8em; vertical-align: middle;" type="button" value="?"/> <span style="margin-left: 5px;"><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable</span>

After the fields have been entered as in the screenshot, click **Save** to add the rule. Click **Apply Changes** on the top right corner to complete the process.

## Appendix D.Troubleshooting

### Problem 1

Outbound load is only distributed over one WAN connection.

#### Solution

Outbound load balancing can only be distribute traffic evenly between available WAN connections if many outbound connections are made. If there is only one user on the LAN and only one download session is made from his/her browser, the WAN connections cannot be fully utilized.

For a single user, download management applications are recommended. The applications can split a file into pieces and download the pieces simultaneously. Examples include: DownThemAll (Firefox Extension), iGetter (Mac), etc.

If the outbound traffic is going across the SpeedFusion™ tunnel, (i.e., transferring a file to a VPN peer) the bandwidth of all WAN connections will be bonded. In this case, all bandwidth will be utilized and a file will be transferred across all available WAN connections.

For additional details, please refer to this FAQ:

<https://forum.peplink.com/t/speed-test-tool-for-combined-download-speed-in-multi-wan-environment/8457>

### Problem 2

I am using a download manager program (e.g., Download Accelerator Plus, DownThemAll, etc.). Why is the download speed still only that of a single link?

#### Solution

First, check whether all WAN connections are up. Second, ensure your download manager application has split the file into 3 parts or more. It is also possible that all of 2 or even 3 download sessions were being distributed to the same link by chance.

### Problem 3

I am using some websites to look up my public IP address, e.g., [www.whatismyip.com](http://www.whatismyip.com). When I press the browser's Refresh button, the server almost always returns the same address. Isn't the IP address supposed to be changing for every refresh?

#### Solution

The web server has enabled the **Keep Alive** function, which ensures that you use the same TCP session to query the server. Try to test with a website that does not enable **Keep Alive**.

### Problem 4

What can I do if I suspect a problem on my LAN connection?

#### Solution

You can test the LAN connection using ping. For example, if you are using DOS/Windows, at the command prompt, type `ping 192.168.1.1`. This pings the Peplink Balance device (provided that Peplink Balance's IP is 192.168.1.1) to test whether the connection to the Peplink Balance is OK.

## Problem 5

What can I do if I suspect a problem on my Internet/WAN connection?

### Solution

You can test the WAN connection using ping, as in the solution to Problem 4. As we want to isolate the problems from the LAN, ping will be performed from the Peplink Balance. By using **Ping/Traceroute** under the **Status** tab of the Peplink Balance, you may be able to find the source of the problem.

## Problem 6

When I upload files to a server via FTP, the transfer stalls after a few kilobytes of data are sent. What should I do?

### Solution

The maximum transmission unit (MTU) or MSS setting may need to be adjusted. By default, the MTU is set at 1440. Choose **Auto** for all of your WAN connections. If that does not solve the problem, you can try the MTU 1492 if a connection is DSL. If the problem still persists, change the size to progressively smaller values until your problem is resolved (e.g., 1462, 1440, 1420, 1400, etc).

## Additional troubleshooting resources:

Peplink Community Forums: <https://forum.peplink.com/>



## **Appendix E.**

### **FCC Requirements for Operation in the United States Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Compliance Notice:**

#### **For Balance 30 Pro**

#### **Federal Communication Commission Interference Statement**

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

FCC Caution: Any changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Operations in the 5.15-5.25GHz band are restricted to indoor usage only.

#### **Radiation Exposure Statement :**

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 49 cm between the radiator and your body.

Note: The country code selection is for non-US models only and is not available to all US models. Per FCC regulation, all WiFi products marketed in US must fixed to US operation channels only

**CE Statement for Pepwave Routers ( Balance 30 Pro )**

**DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY**

We affirm the electrical equipment manufactured by us fulfils the requirements of the Radio Equipment Directive 2014/53/EU.

Name of manufacturer	PISMO LABS TECHNOLOGY LIMITED
Contact information of the manufacturer	A8, 5/F, HK Spinners Industrial Building Phase 6, 481 Castle Peak Road Cheung Sha Wan Hong Kong tel. (852) 2990 7600, fax. (852) 3007 0588 e-mail: cs@peplink.com
Description of the appliance	PEPWAVE / PEPLINK Wireless Product
Model name of the appliance	Peplink Balance 30 Pro BPL-031-LTEA-W-T Balance 30 Pro Pismo 811AC B30 Pro
Trade name of the appliance	PEPWAVE / PEPLINK

The construction of the appliance is in accordance with the following standards:


EN 300 328 V2.1.1  
EN 301 893 V2.1.1  
EN 301908-1 V11.1.1  
EN 301 489-1 V2.2.1  
Draft EN 301 489-17 V3.2.0  
Draft EN 301 489-52 V1.1.0  
EN 55032: 2015 + AC:2016  
EN 61000-3-2: 2014  
EN 61000-3-3: 2013  
EN 55024: 2010 + A1 :2015  
EN 62311 : 2008  
EN 62368-1:2014/AC:2015

Yours sincerely,



Antony Chong  
Director of Hardware Engineering  
Peplink International Limited

---

	BE	BG	CZ	DK	DE	EE	IE	EL	ES	FR	HR	IT	CY	LV
	LT	LU	HU	MT	NL	AT	PL	PT	RO	SI	SK	FI	SE	

**2.4GHz ( 2412 – 2472 MHz ) : 19.93 dBm**

**5GHz ( 5150 - 5250 MHz ) : 22.88 dBm**

This equipment complies with CE radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 20cm between the radiator & your body.

**contact as: <https://www.peplink.com/>**